

(19)



Eur päisches Patentamt
European Patent Office
Office européen des brevets



(11) Publication number:

0 514 830 A2

(12)

EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION(21) Application number: **92108420.8**(22) Date of filing: **19.05.92**

(51) Int. Cl.⁵: **C12N 15/57, C12N 9/50,
 C12N 15/38, C07K 15/00,
 G01N 33/571, G01N 33/53,
 C12Q 1/68, A61K 37/64**

(30) Priority: **24.05.91 US 705814**
07.02.92 US 832855

(43) Date of publication of application:
25.11.92 Bulletin 92/48

(84) Designated Contracting States:
**AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IT LI LU MC
 NL PT SE**

(71) Applicant: **ARCH DEVELOPMENT
 CORPORATION**
1101 East 58th Street
Chicago, Illinois 60637(US)

(72) Inventor: **Roizman, Bernard**
5555 Everett
Chicago, Illinois(US)
 Inventor: **Liu, Fenyong**
5734 S. Maryland
Chicago, Illinois(US)

(74) Representative: **Brown, John David et al**
FORRESTER & BOEHMERT
Franz-Joseph-Strasse 38
W-8000 München 40(DE)

(54) **Methods and compositions of a preparation and use of a herpes protease.**

(57) The present invention relates to the identification and purification of a herpes protease and a nucleic acid segment coding for two proteins. The first protein is the herpes protease which is able to cleave itself and also cleave the second protein. This protease is required for the assembly of the herpes virus capsid, therefore is essential for replication. The second protein has previously been designated as the family of proteins in viral infected cells, ICP35. The protease and its substrates are encoded by overlapping nucleic acid segments. This invention also relates to a promoter sequence for the second protein. Methods are presented of producing a viral protease, screening a protease inhibitor which may be used in a drug designed for the treatment of herpes disease, methods for treating herpes and other viral infections wherein the virus employs a protease substantially similar to the herpes protease, for capsid production. Methods for detecting herpes infections and other viral infections are also disclosed.

EP 0 514 830 A2

The government may own certain rights in the present invention pursuant to grants from the National Cancer Institute (CA47451) and the National Institute for Allergy and Infectious Diseases (AI124009 and AI1588-11), the United States Public Health Service.

The present invention relates to the identification and purification of herpes proteases and to nucleic acid segments coding for such proteases. The present invention also relates to methods of selecting candidate substances that are able to inhibit the function of these proteases and the use of such inhibitors to detect and treat viral infections.

Viral Infections Pose Major Health Problems

Treatment and prevention of viral infections is a major medical goal. To understand the state of the art in developing methods of treating and preventing viral infections, it is important to understand the structure and function of infectious virus. A virus is a small genetic element that contains either single or double-stranded DNA or RNA and can alternate between two distinct states: intracellular and extracellular. A virus is an obligatory intra-cellular parasite that cannot reproduce by itself. In effect, the virus takes over the biosynthetic machinery of the host cell and uses it for viral synthesis. Some of the protein products of the viral DNA are special enzymes or inhibitory factors that stop host cell metabolism, but most viral-encoded proteins are used in the construction of new virions. Protein synthesis is directed by the virus to produce necessary components for its replication and packaging, e.g. the *capsid*. These components must be assembled in an order depending on the virus, and new particles must escape from the cell if they are to infect other cells.

The general steps of the intracellular viral replication (lytic cycle) are:

1. attachment of the virus to a host cell (absorption);
2. penetration of the virus or its nucleic acid into the host cell;
3. replication of the viral nucleic acid;
4. production of viral proteins and other essential components;
5. assembly of viral nucleic acid and protein components; and
6. release of mature virion particles from the host cell.

The overall result of the lytic cycle is new virus particles and dead host cells because the virus has appropriated the vital forces of the host. In certain types of infection, such as that caused by herpes, there may be a latent period wherein the virus resides in the host cell.

Elucidation of viral genetic systems opens the door to investigations on the mechanisms of viral infection and replication which are not simply of academic interest, but are directed toward detection, prevention, and treatment of viral caused diseases. Host resistance to viral infection may occur through absence of a viral-receptor site to prevent attachment of the virus to the host cell; destruction of the viral nucleic acids after they are injected into the host cell, for example, by cleavage of viral nucleic acids by host enzymes; inhibition of essential viral protein synthesis; or destruction of viral proteins after their formation in the host cell.

Development of antiviral drugs to supplement natural resistance is a major commercial objective whose goal is to counteract the devastating effects of many viral infections on humans. Unfortunately, treatments available to date are inadequate for most types of virus. For example, interferons are cellular antiviral substances, low molecular weight proteins, that prevent viral multiplication. However, interferons tend to be host specific, not viral specific, and have no effect on host cells already infected. Also, they can be toxic at high concentrations.

The target of antiviral drugs may be enzymes uniquely specified by the virus. For example, a major target for attack on HIV infections which cause AIDS, is the enzyme reverse transcriptase. Inhibiting this enzyme effects blockage of viral replication. Unfortunately, resistance develops to these drugs, e.g. to AZT, and is a major limitation of such treatment. The anti-herpes simplex virus drugs currently on the market are directed against enzymes which synthesize viral DNA (e.g. acyclovir). Because of emergence of resistance to these drugs, there is considerable interest in new targets.

Production of viral proteins is of particular interest as a stage where the virus may be attacked. In the extracellular or infectious state, the basic structure of viruses consists of a nucleic acid core surrounded by proteins (*nucleocapsid*). Some viruses also have an *envelope* that is external to the nucleocapsid, and contains lipids and protein. The protein coat is called the *capsid*. Many different proteins may constitute the *capsid*, depending on the virus. Some viruses encode 3-10 proteins, others more than 200. Virus particles are called *virions*; their role is to protect the viral nucleic acid when transferred from the cell in which it replicated to a new host cell. After transfer to the host cells, the viral intracellular state begins, and replication of the virus is potentiated. A number of non-herpes viruses appear to express proteases with

cleavage site specificity which are potential targets for therapeutic intervention. However, no such protease has previously been identified for the herpes virus, a particularly widespread infectious agent for which treatment and prevention methods are grossly inadequate.

5 The Herpes Family

The family of herpes virus includes animal viruses of great clinical interest because they are the causative agents of many diseases. Epstein-Barr virus has been implicated in cancer initiation; cytomegalovirus is the greatest infectious threat to AIDS patients; and Varicella Zoster Virus, is of great concern in certain parts of the world where chicken pox and shingles are serious health problems. A worldwide increase in the incidence of sexually transmitted herpes simplex (HSV) infection has occurred in the past decade, accompanied by an increase in neonatal herpes. Contact with active ulcerative lesions or asymptomatically excreting patients can result in transmission of the infective agent. Transmission is by exposure to virus at mucosal surfaces and abraded skin, which permit the entry of virus and the initiation of viral replication in cells of the epidermis and dermis. In addition to clinically apparent lesions, latent infections may persist, in particular in nerve cells. Various stimuli may cause reactivation of the HSV infection. Consequently, this is a difficult infection to eradicate. This scourge has largely gone unchecked due to the inadequacies of treatment modalities.

20 Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV)

Herpes simplex viruses subtypes 1 and 2 (HSV-1, HSV-2), are herpes viruses that are among the most common infectious agents encountered by humans (Corey and Spear, 1986; Whitley, 1990). These viruses cause a broad spectrum of diseases which range from relatively insignificant and nuisance infections such as recurrent herpes simplex labialis, to severe and life-threatening diseases such as herpes simplex encephalitis (HSE) of older children and adults, or the disseminated infections of neonates. Clinical outcome of herpes infections is dependent upon early diagnosis and prompt initiation of antiviral therapy. However, despite some successful therapy, dermal and epidermal lesions recur, and HSV infections of neonates and infections of the brain are associated with high morbidity and mortality. Earlier diagnosis than is currently possible would improve therapeutic success. In addition, improved treatments are desperately needed.

Extrinsic assistance has been provided to infected cells, in particular, in the form of chemicals. For example, chemical inhibition of herpes viral replication has been effected by a variety of nucleoside analogues such as 5-fluorodeoxyuridine (FUDR), 5-iododeoxyuridine, 5-iododeoxyuridine, thymine arabinoside, and the like.

Some protection has been provided in experimental animal models by polyspecific or monospecific anti-HSV antibodies, HSV-primed lymphocytes, and cloned T cells to specific viral antigens (Corey and Spear, 1986). However, no satisfactory treatment has been found.

Proteases have not been identified in the herpes viruses, but there is some knowledge of the biology of the herpes virus family. Herpes viruses are double stranded DNA viruses that replicate in host cell nuclei. The herpes *virion* is constituted from over 30 different proteins which are assembled within the host cell. About 6-8 are used in the capsid. The preferred host cells for herpes viruses are vertebrate cells.

The herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1) genome specifies an abundant *capsid* protein complex which in denaturing gels forms multiple bands due to different molecular weights of the component proteins. Some preliminary identification of these proteins has been reported. A set of herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1) capsid proteins was reported by Gibson and Roizman (1972, 1974). A genetically and immunologically related family of viral *capsid* proteins identified by their migration bands in denaturing gels has been designated infected-cell proteins 35(ICP35). (Braun et al., 1983, 1984) At least four major and a number of minor bands in one-dimensional denaturing polyacrylamide gels, and numerous spots in two-dimensional gels, have been reported.

Braun et al. (1984) using a panel of monoclonal antibodies exemplified by H745 reported that ICP35 proteins are processed post-translationally into at least 6 species (ICP35a,b,c,d,e,f) differing in electrophoretic mobility on SDS polyacrylamide gels. Although characterized by different molecular weights, this group of virus polypeptides are detected by the same monoclonal antibodies and are coded by a region in the HSV-1 genome. Empty capsids do not contain these polypeptides. A set of proteins possibly analogous to ICP35 was reported by Preston et al. (1983).

Nucleotide sequencing has been performed on the HSV-1 genome, and attempts, generally unsuccessful, have been made to correlate various capsid proteins to sequences of the genome. For example, it has been proposed that the ICP35 proteins are encoded by the open reading frame designated U_L26 (McGeoch,

et al., 1988). In the present invention it is shown that this prediction was incorrect or at least incomplete. Crude mapping of the region encoding ICP35 was attempted by Braun et al. (1984) on the basis of the analysis of HSV-1 x HSV-2 intertypic recombinants. These authors proposed that ICP35 is encoded by a region located between the genes specifying thymidine kinase (U_L23) and glycoprotein B (U_L27). This is not a very specific prediction because it covers an area now known to include four genes.

The present invention resulted from a successful search for a new virus target for therapy. The search began by choice of the HSV-1 ICP35 protein family as a substrate. A protease target for antiviral chemotherapy, in particular, as applied to herpes virus infections, was identified in this fashion. Methods of preparing and detecting the protease, methods for selecting inhibitors of the protease, as well as detection and treatment protocols based on inhibiting the protease, are also aspects of the present invention. The finding of similarity between the gene for the herpes protease in HSV-1 and that in human cytomegalovirus indicates that the present invention is broad applicable to all herpesvirus, including HSV, CMV, EBV and VZV.

This invention relates to the identification, purification and manipulation of viral proteases for the development of methodology and compositions for the treatment and prevention of viral infections. The proteases of the present invention may be further defined as serine proteases with the properties expected of this category of protease. A *serine protease* is an enzyme which catalyzes the hydrolysis of peptide bonds, and typically have a serine residue at the active site. (White, Handler and Smith, 1973). Serine proteases also typically include an arrangement of a triad of catalytic residues, that are somewhat removed from one another in the linear arrangement of amino acids, but brought together as a "proteolytic cleft" in the properly folded protease. Various difference have been observed in this catalytic triad from protease to protease. For example, in both trypsin and subtilisin serine proteases, Asp, His, and Ser are the amino acids of the catalytic triad. However, in trypsin-like serine proteases, they are arranged His, Asp, Ser, whereas subtilisin-like proteases are arranged Asp, His, Ser. There are also differences in the relative spacing of these key residues. In addition, there are other evolutionarily conserved features of these proteases which allow them to be identified as serine proteases and subsequently classified. The presence of the catalytically important Asp, His, and Ser residues are the crucial tests, however, for membership and classification in the serine proteases.

The proteases of the present invention appear to be essential for development of the capsid of the virus. Consequently, inhibiting the protease action will lead to disruption of the lytic cycle of the virus. Obviously, such proteases are optimal targets for antiviral therapy. In particular, the target is useful for attacks on the herpes virus for which no protease has heretofore been reported. The present invention relates more particularly to the identification, purification, and manipulation of herpes serine proteases, and to the use of inhibitors of the proteases to detect and treat herpes infections.

In an illustrative embodiment, a protease has been purified from HSV-1, a subtype of the herpes simplex virus. The apparent molecular weight of this protease as determined by SDS-polyacrylamide PAGE gel electrophoresis is approximately 75-85kd, generally about 80kd. The herpes protease is further characterized as having an amino acid sequence of approximately 450-635 amino acids. However, these ranges are flexible. For example, the 635 amino acid sequence may have at least 329 amino acids removed from its carboxyl end and still maintain its serine protease activity. In the 635 amino acid embodiment the protease cleavage site is located at a position about 18 - 25 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus, preferably about 20 amino acid from the carboxyl terminus. The proteases are obtained either from cells injected with HSV-1 and 2, cells transfected with a DNA sequence encoding the protease, or in purified form by being synthesized *in vitro* or in cell free systems, using a reticulocyte lysate, for example, from a rabbit. After synthesis of the protein, the protein will migrate as a single band on a denaturing gel and is readily detected with ³⁵S labelled methionine. After about 5 hours of protein synthesis, two bands will result. As demonstrated in subsequent sections, the second band is a self-cleavage product of the first.

Characteristics of this protease include: (i) it contains four domains, several of which are not required for its catalytic activity and (ii) the active site is near the amino terminus of the protease. Mutations involving amino acid substitutions, deletions, insertion of stop codons or of 20 amino acid stretches into the protease have delineated the dispensable domains No. I and No. IV at the amino and carboxyl domains of the gene. The essential carboxyl-proximal domain of No. III can be separated from the essential amino proximal domain of No. II by at least 20 amino acids and the protease will remain functional.

The amino proximal domain is the most conserved region among Varicella-zoster virus and human cytomegalovirus homologues of U_L26. Of the conserved aspartic acid, histidine, or serine amino acid codons tested in this domain, only the histidine residues 61 and 148 could not be replaced without impairment of the proteolytic activity of the protease. Three dimensional crystal structure analyses may provide further insight into the structure of the active sites (Skalka, 1989).

The present invention also relates to nucleic acid segments which are capable of coding for the herpes proteases described herein. In an illustrative embodiment, extensive manipulation of nucleic acid sequences within the HSV-1 genome has revealed the secrets of viral mechanisms and allowed isolation and purification of useful nucleic acid segments and their expression products. Examples of such manipulation include incorporation of selected segments of the nucleic acid sequence with appropriate promoters and tracers into plasmids to determine the actions and interactions of the genetic regions, their expression products, and mechanisms of control over their expression. These specially designed plasmids are aspects of the invention.

Another aspect of this invention is the coding domain in the nucleic acid segment for the family of herpes simplex virus 1 capsid proteins designated ICP35. This newly defined coding region has been designated U_L26.5. In an illustrative embodiment of the coding sequence for ICP35 proteins, the segment has been demarcated by the restriction endonuclease cleavage sites *Hpa-I* and *Pst-I*. These two cleavage sites are located at map positions +832 and +2761. These map locations are defined as distances from the transcription initiation site of the U_L26 open reading frame in the HSV-1 genome. This position has been designated +1. The gene coding for the ICP35 proteins also comprises those sequences that are downstream from the *KpnI* site which is at map position +2104, and continue all the way to a poly A site at position +2138.

The nucleic acid segments in the present invention are further defined as having overlapping open reading frames for the protease and the ICP35 proteins (FIG. 2). These overlapping segments are "3'co-terminal." The first segment, the longer of the two, codes for a first protein. This first protein has a molecular weight of approximately 75-85kd. The second open reading frame, the smaller of the two overlapping open reading frame sequences encodes a second protein that has an apparent approximate molecular weight of 40-55kd as determined by SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, preferably 45kd. The first protein is defined to encode a proteolytic module which is capable of cleaving an amino acid sequence in accordance with serine protease action. The substrate capable of being cleaved may be either the protease sequence itself that is encoded by the U_L26 gene, or the ICP35 precursor proteins, which have previously been designated ICD35 c, d based on migration in one and two dimensional gels. Insertion of a 20 amino acid epitope does not preclude cleavage.

A nucleic acid segment, either DNA or RNA, coding for the second protein includes approximately 990 base pairs in an HSV-1 embodiment. In certain applications, the segment encoded need include only the sequences which upon cleavage will yield ICP35 e and f. In other applications, only the cleavage site *per se* may be desired to be encoded, for example in the candidate inhibitor assay described subsequently. In an exemplary embodiment, the nucleic acid segment includes those segments essentially as set forth in FIG. 1A, line 5, of the present specification, or its functional equivalent.

As used herein, *functional equivalents* are intended to refer to those enzymes, and their encoding nucleic acid sequences, in which certain structural changes have been made but which nonetheless are, or encode, catalytically active proteases capable of cleaving ICP35. It is generally known in the art that modifications and/or changes may be made in the structure of proteins and still obtain a molecule having like or otherwise desirable characteristics. Thus, certain amino acids may be substituted for other amino acids in a protein structure without appreciable loss of interactive binding capacity with, for example, substrate molecules or specific antibodies. Since it is the interactive capacity and nature of a protein that defines that protein's biological functional activity, certain amino acid sequence substitutions can be made in a protein sequence (or, of course, its underlying DNA coding sequence) and nevertheless obtain a protein with like properties. It is thus contemplated by the inventors that various changes may be made in the herpes protease DNA or protein sequences without appreciable loss of their biological utility or activity.

In making such changes, the hydropathic index of amino acids may be considered. The importance of the hydropathic amino acid index, i.e. hydrophobicity and charge characteristics, in conferring interactive biologic function on a protein is generally understood in the art (Kyte et al., 1982). For example, it is known that certain amino acids may be substituted for other amino acids having a comparable hydropathic index or score, e.g. generally +/- 1, and still retain a similar biological activity. The relative hydropathic character of the amino acid is believed to determine the secondary structure of the resultant protein, which in turn defines the interaction of the protein with substrate molecules. Thus, for example, it is proposed the isoleucine, which has a hydropathic index of +4.5, can be substituted for valine (+4.2) or leucine (+3.8), and still obtain a protein having similar biologic activity. Alternatively, at the other end of the scale, it is proposed that lysine (-3.9) can be substituted for arginine (-4.5), and so on.

Amino acid substitutions are generally therefore based on the relative similarity of the side-chain substituents, for example, size, electrophilic character, charge, and the like. Exemplary substitutions which take various of the foregoing characteristics into consideration are well known to those of skill in the art and

include, for example: alanine, glycine and serine; arginine and lysine; glutamate and aspartate; serine and threonine; and valine, leucine and isoleucine.

Nucleic acid sequences of the present invention are also useful as hybridization probes, which will in turn have a number of applications. Hybridization probes may be employed, e.g., to select mutant gene clones from libraries, in the preparation of antisense molecules (e.g., stabilized antisense RNA molecules), as PCR primers and probes, to name just a few of many applications that involve hybridization as applied to (or in addition to) protein encoding capability. Of course, useful hybridization probes may be prepared in virtually any length, depending on the intended application and hybridization conditions. For example, probes as small as 10 to 14 nucleotides in length can nevertheless be expected to form a stable hybrid with a template molecule, so long as the hybridization conditions are appropriate for the degree of sequence homology between the probe and the template. Similarly, molecules ranging in length up to that sufficient to encode a gene, or even multiple genes, may be employed as hybridization probes.

In any event, in preferred embodiments nucleic acid molecules useful as hybridization probes or primers, may range in size from, e.g., 10-14 to 20, 30, 40 or 50 or so nucleotides, up to 100, 200, 500 or even 1000 or 2000 nucleotides in length, depending on the intended application and hybridization conditions.

Thus, nucleic acid segments in accordance with the invention may include a sequence either smaller or larger than those illustrated in FIG. 1, for example, it may correspond to an approximately 14 nucleotide base pair long region which is capable of hybridizing to the nucleic acid segments of FIG. 1 under stringent conditions. Small segments such as this may be used as probes to detect the presence of the protease coding region.

A nucleic acid segment may also be a mRNA sequence for the protease or the ICP35 proteins. The mRNA for the latter is transcribed at approximate nucleotide position +1000 (a designated distance from the herpes U_L26 transcription initiation site which is designated +1) to position +2138. An mRNA is translated from the methionine initiation codon which is located at +1099. Smaller or larger segments are also contemplated depending on the use to which the segment is employed. These mRNA segments are useful to synthesize the ICP35 cleavage site.

Various nucleic acid segments within the herpes genome have been isolated and cloned. A nucleic acid segment coding for a herpes protease may be obtained from the herpes genome from a region corresponding to map locations of the U_L26 herpes open reading frame. A smaller segment contained within the protease coding segment lies between the thymidine kinase gene and glycoprotein gB gene and includes a DNA sequence from position +832 to +2138. This coding sequence not only may be expressed as the ICP35 herpes capsid family proteins, but includes a promoter sequence for regulating the ICP35 coding sequence.

The ICP35 promoter has been isolated and shown to be an extremely active promoter, as is evidenced by the observation that increased numbers of copies of the substrate are produced by the ICP35 encoding unit compared to the production of the protease from the longer U_L26 open reading frame. It includes between 135 and 168 base pairs and maps between position +832 and +1000 in the first open reading frame of U_L26. This promoter region is capable of initiating expression of the ICP35 proteins. It is also useful in driving expression at an increased rate of other nucleic acid sequences, for example herpes simplex genes U_S5 and U_L10.

Isolation and manipulation of the coding sequence for the ICP35 proteins was an important achievement of the present invention because these proteins are used in construction of the herpes virus capsid. To become functional members of the capsid, the ICP35 protein precursor ICP35 c, d must be cleaved by the herpes protease produced by the U_L26 coding sequence, to yield e and f. This protease is capable of effecting cleavage of the precursor proteins even when both genes encoding for the protease and the precursor are in a trans position.

The nucleic acid segments of the present invention that carry coding sequences may be carried in a recombinant expression vector capable of expressing encoded virus serine proteases. Examples of such nucleic acid segments are those shown for the herpes virus, HSV-1 in FIG. 1A designated as A-Z, AA-NN of the present specification. These nucleic acid segments or their functional equivalents may be operably linked, optionally, to selected promoter and/or control elements, as well as to other elements such as a termination site, a poly-A addition site and to other elements, as appropriate (see, e.g., plasmids A-Z, AA-NN). These components may include promoters such as those capable of controlling the herpes α 4, the ICP35 genes or virtually any other promoter capable of driving expression in the selective host cell. The recombinant expression vectors may comprise as a promoter either a eukaryotic or prokaryotic promoter, and may include a polyadenylation signal at position 3' of the carboxyl terminal amino acid. The promoter may be within a transcriptional unit of the encoded protein. Vectors may also include markers which have

been used for the analysis presented herein. Examples of host cells are BHK cells, Vero, *E. coli* or other eukaryotic or prokaryotic cells known to those of skill in the art to permit expression of transferred vectors according to the present invention.

This invention further relates to methods of preparing a herpes protease. An embodiment of such methods includes the following steps:

- (1) Preparing a nucleic acid segment which encodes the herpes protease; and
- (2) Allowing the segment to be expressed in order to produce the protein.

In an illustrative embodiment the method of preparing a protease includes use of a host cell into which the nucleic acid segment has been transferred. The host cell is cultured under conditions suitable for expression and the protein is thereby expressed. The method may also include a step wherein the protein is isolated and purified by methods well known to those skilled in the art. The degree of purification required will depend on the application for which the protein is intended. Alternatively, the nucleic acid segment may be expressed in a cell free system, such as a rabbit reticulocyte lysate, or synthesized by an automated protein synthesizer as referenced herein.

A nucleic acid segment which codes for the herpes protease or for the ICP35 proteins may be prepared by obtaining viral genomic DNA from cells which are infected with herpes, amplifying the proteolytic site containing nucleic acid sequence region within the nucleic acid of interest, and preparing recombinant clones which include such amplified nucleic acid sequences. The clones may be then selected to contain the desired amplified nucleic acid segments by employing monoclonal antibodies directed to at least the region coding for the proteolytic domain of the protease or the cleavage site of the ICP35 protein to screen such clones. Other cloning and clone screening techniques well known to those of skill in the art are also suitable (Sambrook et al., 1989).

This invention also relates to a method for cleaving a herpes molecule which includes the steps of treating the molecule with the protease under conditions effective for cleavage. Such conditions are those in which serine proteases generally operate.

In an exemplary embodiment, methods for detecting the herpes protease in tissue samples consist of preparing antibodies directed against the protease, labelling these antibodies, contacting tissue samples with the labelled antibody, and detecting the labelled antibody protein heteroconjugate by standard techniques well known to those of skill in the art. These labels may be fluorescent labels or radioactive labels.

One of the methods for detecting the nucleic acid segments in biological samples is to prepare a nucleotide probe that is capable of hybridizing to a nucleic acid segment substantially as set forth in FIG. 1, either line 5 or 6, or as disclosed in other areas of the specification herein as coding for a herpes protease or the ICP35 proteins. The nucleotide probe may be labelled. The probe is then incubated with the biological sample to be tested, under selective conditions appropriate for the formation of specific hybrids. The specific hybrids formed between the probes and the nucleic acids of the biological sample are then detected by a variety of methods well known by those skilled in the art, for example, by detecting a radioactive label on the probe. The formation of such hybrids is indicative of the presence of the nucleic acid segment that was sought initially.

A method for treatment of viral infections makes use of the target proteases disclosed herein which are vital to the viral life cycle. An example of such a method comprises preparing an effective amount of an inhibitor of the protease. The amount will depend on the route of treatment. The route may be topical creams, ointments or sprays applied directly to the skin, or intravenous injection for systemic infections. The inhibitor is contemplated to be combined with a pharmacologically acceptable carrier which would be appropriate for use in humans depending on the route of application. Finally a therapeutic amount of the inhibitor is determined such that the herpes virus itself is inhibited from reproducing, but the host cells are not destroyed. The method of treatment disclosed herein is particularly applicable to the herpes virus simplex subtypes 1 or 2, but will be generally applicable to the herpes family, members of which are known to have extensive DNA homologies. Because of extensive sequence homologies to HSV-1 U_L26 in other organisms, e.g. cytomegalovirus (U_L80), Varicella-zoster virus (ORF33), Epstein-Barr virus, these treatment strategies are likely to be broadly applicable to all herpesvirus.

This inhibition may be either at the level of transcription, translation, or protein action. Interference with transcription would necessitate interfering with mRNA formation on a DNA template. Interference with translation would necessitate interfering with the synthesis of proteins on the mRNA template. Alternatively, the action of the protease may itself be disrupted either by destroying the structure of the protease, in particular its proteolytic domain, altering the cleavage site of it substrate, or by providing a false substrate which inactivates the protease. Another form of inhibitor comprises a nucleic acid segment which is capable of hybridizing with the coding sequence of a herpes protease, but forms a hybrid which inhibits transcription

of the mRNA from which the protease would be translated.

There are several inhibitors that appear to be suitable for purposes of this invention. It has been found that chymostatin and diisopropyl fluorophosphate provide 100% inhibition of the protease in an *in vitro* assay. Phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride provides at least 50% inhibition, this reduction is due to the instability of the inhibitor over time. The results of studies with a variety of protease inhibitors showed that the U_L26 protease was inhibited by serine protease inhibitors but not by cysteine, aspartic acid or metalloprotease inhibitors. Other contemplated inhibitors include antipain, aprotinin, leupeptin, (4-amino-phenyl)-methane sulfonyl fluoride, and any other serine protease inhibitors that tests positive in the candidate screening assay described herein. In particular embodiments, non-toxic derivatives of the inhibitors disclosed herein are contemplated.

In order to determine still other inhibitors the candidate substances of interest are screened by preparing a virus protease, combining the protease with the candidate inhibitor substance, and selecting a substrate capable of being cleaved by the protease. The assay is conducted by contacting the substrate with the protease-candidate substance combination, and determining whether the candidate substance has inhibited the action of the protease on the substrate. In an illustrative embodiment, the virus protease used to test for a candidate substance is the purified herpes protease synthesized *in vitro* in a rabbit reticulocyte lysate by methods disclosed in the present specification.

The protease is combined with the candidate inhibitor substance either in a laboratory *in vitro* assay or in a test organism. The substrate selected which is capable of being cleaved by the protease, may be the protease itself, or at least the cleavage site of the ICP35 protein precursor c, d. After contacting the substrate with a protease and the candidate inhibitor substance it can be determined whether the substance has inhibited the action of the protease on the substrate by determining whether cleavage of the substrate has taken place. In one embodiment this may be determined by seeing if the ICP35 c, d proteins have produced ICP35 subunits e and f as determined by SDS gel electrophoresis, which are only formed by cleavage of c, d by the protease. If the proteins have not been cleaved, the inference is that the candidate substance indeed inhibits the virus protease. This inhibitor may then be used in therapeutic trials.

The virus protease used in the candidate inhibitor substance assay may be prepared through the application of genetic recombinant technology, wherein, for example, an expression vector includes at least the proteolytic module of the protease. The expression vector is then transferred into an appropriate host cell under conditions which permit expression of the coding sequence. After the sequence has been expressed in the form of a protease or protease segment, the protease may be collected from the cell and further purified if required, by methods well known to those of skill in the art.

An alternative method of preparing the herpes protease is to obtain a sample which contains the protease, for example a herpes infected tissue segment or exudate. The sample is then homogenized and fractionated to obtain a protease fraction. The protease fraction may be then further isolated and purified by methods known to those of skill in the art depending upon the particular application.

This invention also relates to a method for selecting a serine protease with functions equivalent to those disclosed herein in different species of herpes, other non-herpes virus or, indeed, any organism. To select the protease, an amino acid sequence comprising at least the cleavage site of the protease disclosed in the present specification is prepared. The candidate viral protease is then contacted with the cleavage site containing the amino acid sequence which is susceptible to cleavage by a viral serine protease. Finally a determination is made whether cleavage has occurred by using the ICP35 substrate and determining whether ICP35 c, d has been altered to e and f. By these methods, it has been shown that the HSV-2 protease is capable of cleaving ICP35 c, d to e and f.

The methods and compositions of the present invention have made it possible to identify essential serine proteases in other species. The methods of the present invention are generally applicable, only the source genome will change. It is expected that these serine proteases are encoded by conservative segments and are widespread. For the herpes viruses, four of the six viral DNA sequences (HSV-1, EBV, VZV, CMV) are reported and have been entered into a computer data base available to those of skill in the art. Homologies in amino acid sequences and function are expected based on the conservative nature of serine proteases, and homologies detected previously among related species, e.g. the herpes family. (Davison et al., 1986; McGeoch et al., 1988) Thus, it is predictable that U_L26 of HSV-1, BVRF2 of EBV, U_L80 of CMV, Gene 33 of VZV play the same or similar role in the maturation of capsid and encode a protease. Because extensive sequence homology was found between these presumptive proteases and HSV-1 U_L26, it is believed that the action or cleavage mechanism of these protease is the same as the HSV-1 U_L26. Thus, it is not surprising that the present invention including inhibitor described have against herpes simplex virus (HSV-1 and HSV-2) and can be applicable to the treatment of other herpes viruses (EBV, VZV, CMV and human herpes virus 6).

As an indication that the serine proteases of the present invention will not be confined to the herpes family, there are reports of capsid assembly in other microbes. Bacteriophage T₄ and lambda are most commonly studied for capsid assembly. In these phages, first a preformed capsid is assembled by interaction of outer coat protein and inner scaffolding protein. Then, the scaffolding protein is cleaved by a phage-encoded protease and removed from the capsid. At the same time, the phage DNA is packaged into the capsid to give rise to mature capsid. The cleavage of scaffolding protein is essential to produce mature capsid. Recently, cryo-electromicroscopy studies revealed the similarity of the capsid structure between HSV and lambda phage. The sequence of human CMV strain AD169 has been determined, and a gene analogous to HSV UL26 has been identified. ICP35 has been proposed to function as a scaffolding or assembly protein in the process of HSV capsid maturation. The cleavage of ICP35 by the proteases of the present invention is required for the capsid maturation and is essential for the replication of the virus. The proteases disclosed herein function as a counterpart to those of phages which cleave the ICP 35 protein to initiate DNA packaging. Therefore, the candidate protease inhibitor assays and methods of treatment disclosed herein have wide applicability than to only the herpes family.

A *domain* refers to a portion or region of a protein defined as an amino acid sequence within a polypeptide or protein, in the present case a domain is defined functionally by the effect of amino acid deletions or substitutions in a sequence on the function or substitution of the protein.

Downstream refers to nucleic acid sequences found in a 3' direction from a given point of reference along a nucleic acid molecule.

An *epitope* is an amino acid sequence which is an antigenic determinant.

An *open reading frame* (ORF) contains a series of triplets coding for amino acids without any termination codons. Sequences of this type are potentially translatable into a protein.

Substantially purified in reference to DNA refers to DNA segments isolated free of their natural state as they may be present in the genome of an organism, and is intended to include segments as they would exist upon genetic engineering, e.g. by insertion into a recombinant vector.

A *transcriptional unit* is the distance between sites of initiation and termination by RNA polymerase.

Upstream refers to nucleic acid sequences found in a 5' direction from a given point of reference along a nucleic acid molecule.

A *viral protease* is an enzyme capable of cleaving viral precursor proteins at a specific site.

HSV herpes simplex virus

CMV cytomegalovirus

ORF open reading frame

ICP Infected cellular polypeptide

DFP diisopropyl fluorophosphate

TPCK L-1-tosylamido-2-phenylethyl chloromethyl ketone

TLCK N- α -p-tosyl-L-lysine chloromethyl ketone

PMSF phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride

EGTA ethyleneglycol-bis (β -aminoethyl ether) N, N, N', N'-tetraacetic acid.

FIG. 1A. Sequence arrangement of the HSV-1 genome, the positions of U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and their transcripts, and the structure of the test plasmids constructed for use in the present invention.

FIG. 1B. Nucleotide and amino acid sequence of the U_L26 open reading frame. The +1 site corresponds to the translational initiation site of U_L26 open reading frame.

FIG. 2. A schematic representation of the relationship among the HSV-1 genomic DNA, the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames (ORF), and the translational and post-translational products of this genetic system.

FIG. 3. Autoradiographic image of DNA probe 1 (A) and probe 2 (B) hybridized to total cytoplasmic RNA from mock-infected and 12-hr-infected Vero cells and digested with S1 nuclease.

FIG. 4. Photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, reacted with goat monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) against HSV-1 ICP35.

FIG. 5. Photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab).

FIG. 6. Photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab).

FIG. 7. Autoradiographic images and photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with

plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab).

FIG. 8. Autoradiographic image of the ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate and electrophoretically separated in a 9.5% denaturing polyacrylamide gel.

FIG. 9. Photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C (34°) or at 39°C (39°), electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 to HSV-1 ICP35 (HSV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase.

FIG. 10. Photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmids and either mock-infected or superinfected with HSV-1(F) (HSV-1) either at 34°C, at 39°C, or at 37°C, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase.

FIG. 11. Photograph of polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmids and either mock-infected or superinfected with HSV-1(F) (HSV-1) or HSV-2(G) (HSV-2) either at 34°C, at 39°C, or at 37°C, electrophoretically separated in denaturing polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV-Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled with peroxidase.

FIG. 12. Autoradiographic image of ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame electrophoretically separated in a denaturing polyacrylamide gel.

FIG. 13. Autoradiographic images and photograph of polypeptides either synthesized *in vitro* from sequences encoded in plasmids U or Y or contained in lysates of cells transfected with plasmids X or Z and superinfected with HSV-1(F) or HSV-1(G).

FIG. 14. Autoradiographic image of ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame electrophoretically separated in a denaturing gel to show the action of PMSF as a protease inhibitor.

FIG. 15. Photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C (34°) or at 39°C (39°), electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted first with monoclonal antibody H725 to HSV-1 ICP35 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 to the CMV epitope (CMV Ab), and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase.

FIG. 16. Autoradiographic images of the electrophoretically separated polypeptides translated *in vitro* in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate from the synthetic RNAs transcribed *in vitro* from the U_L26 ORF cloned in plasmid construct Y.

FIG. 17. Schematic representation of the results of mutagenesis studies.

The present invention relates to herpes proteases and to nucleic acid segments which encode such proteases. The protease encoding segments also contain at least one coding domain for proteins used in capsid production during viral replication. Substrates of the protease include its own amino acid sequence and the precursors of viral capsid proteins (FIG. 2). Inhibitors of the protease arrest the viral life cycle, thereby offering a means of therapeutic intervention. An illustrative embodiment of the methods and compositions of the present invention, employs HSV-1 as a protease source.

A novel herpes protease has been identified in HSV-1, purified and abbreviated as "Pr." A weapon forged to directly attack virus production is provided by inhibiting the action of the Pr protease. Because the protease is essential for packaging of DNA into the viral capsid, inhibition of the protease disrupts the replication cycle of the virus. Treatment with inhibitors of the protease alleviates clinical effects and reduces risk of transmission.

The herpes protease is a product of a region of the HSV genome, the U_L26 open reading frame. The protease is both a necessary and the sole viral protein that suffices to effect its own cleavage and that of the product of the U_L26.5 open reading frame (ORF) a region identified and purified as an aspect of the present invention. The product of the U_L26 ORF, a protein that has been designated as *Pra* is a previously undescribed herpes protease, the first protease ever purified from the herpes virus. In cell free systems, *Pra* cleaved itself to *Prb* providing evidence that the translation product *Pra*, can function as a protease. (FIG. 1) *Prb*, the designation assigned to the product of the autocatalytic cleavage of *Pra*, is approximately 20 amino acids smaller than *Pra*.

Characteristics of the protease of the present invention are not only that it catalyzes its own cleavage, but surprisingly, a second substrate on which it acts, the more abundant substrate, is encoded by a

sequence entirely contained within the gene encoding the protease. The protease and the second substrate share amino acid sequences at their carboxyl termini. A surprising and unexpected finding was that the coding segment for the second substrate codes for viral capsid proteins designated ICP35, and is a newly identified gene designated U_L26.5.

5 The expression of the U_L26 gene in the form of a protease is essential for viral maturation. The evidence for this statement is that a temperature-sensitive mutation reported by Preston, et al. (1983) at the U_L26 open reading frame has a lethal effect on capsid maturation. Therefore, disruption of the function of the protease interferes with viral maturation, presenting a therapeutic strategy.

Three general approaches were employed by the inventors to identify and characterize a herpes
10 protease. These included: 1) transfecting cells with test plasmids and then infecting them with herpes; 2) transfecting cells with two plasmids; and 3) *in vitro* translation. Out of these studies, the inventors identified two overlapping herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1) nucleic acid sequences, which comprise two genes (independent transcription units). The larger of the sequences is designated U_L26 and encodes a protein of an apparent molecular weight of approximately 75-85kd as determined by SDS-PAGE. This protein is a
15 serine protease which is capable of processing itself and the ICP35 protein precursors by carboxyl-terminal proteolytic cleavage. The smaller sequence is designated U_L26.5 and encodes a protein of an apparent molecular weight of approximately 35-50kd as determined by SDS-PAGE. Both genes have been cloned.

One of the reasons that proteases of the present invention have been successfully isolated and purified, was because of the choice of a key test substrate, the ICP35 proteins. To better understand the herpes
20 genome, another productive step was the construction of a large number of plasmids with a specific construction strategy designed to answer a specific question about the mechanism of herpes genetic pathways. Into some of the plasmids, a marker sequence was inserted to permit tracing of the paths of genetic action. The markers in a series of plasmid constructs included deletions or insertions of an α 4 promoter or of a sequence encoding a cytomegalovirus epitope capable of reacting with a mouse
25 monoclonal antibody. These constructs revealed dramatic and surprising differences in the genetic action of a region of the herpes genome from that predicted from previous work on the structure and action of the U_L26 ORF.

In previous work, McGeoch et al.(1988) predicted that the U_L26 frame encodes ICP35. The product of U_L26 predicted from the nucleotide sequences in that open reading frame, however, turned out to be
30 considerably larger than ICP35. A hierarchical genetic complexity was revealed as responsible for production of the herpes capsid protein. What is disclosed in the present invention is a dissection of the domain designated U_L26 into two overlapping transcriptional units yielding proteins which share part of an amino acid sequence. What had previously been designated ICP35 turns out to be encoded only by a portion of the U_L26 open reading frame. For purposes of the present invention, that unit has been designated U_L26.5.

35 The protease of the present invention has general applicability. Homologs of the substrate of the *Pr* protease, which cleaves a precursor to form the ICP35 proteins, have been detected in other herpes viruses. It is likely, therefore, that the methods of the present invention will reveal the protease in other members of the virus family, and in other species. As one example, it has been reported recently that the CMV equivalent of the ICP35 protein is cleaved at the carboxyl terminus (Gibson et al., 1990, Schenk et al.
40 1991), although the CMV protease had not been identified as yet in that species. The herpes-cleaved protease is, therefore, likely to affect cleavage in to other herpes viruses. More recently, there is a report of a proteinase in cytomegalovirus. An active protease is said to be released after cleavage of the full-length protease at amino acid 248, but the present invention suggests the result of such cleavage would be inactive.

45 The existence of a homologous open reading frame to ICP35 in the Varicella-Zoster Virus (VZV) genome (Davison and Scott, 1986; Davison and McGeoch, 1986) suggests that the ICP35 equivalent and the corresponding protease are conserved among the various herpes viruses. Because the amino acid sequence of ICP35 is entirely contained in the carboxyl terminus of *Pr* and because ICP35 does not show demonstrable proteolytic activity, it is expected that the proteolytic activity exhibited by *Pr* is expressed by
50 the amino terminal domain of the protein. It is of interest to note that in the VZV genome (Davison and Scott, 1986), the open reading frame corresponding to U_L26 exhibits greater homology in amino acid sequence at the amino terminus rather than at the carboxyl terminus.

Manipulation of The Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV) Genome

55 The importance of a viral protease as a therapeutic target is clear from a consideration of viral replication mechanisms. For example, the herpes simplex virus has a genome comprising a linear, double-stranded DNA molecule (molecular weight approximately 100×10^6) large enough to encode 7^3 different

gene products. The structure of the genome is unusual among DNA viruses in that two unique nucleotide sequences are flanked by inverted repeated sequences.

The viral genome is packaged within a regular icosahedral protein shell (capsid) composed of 162 capsomes. The outer covering of the virus is a lipid containing membrane envelope derived from modified cell membrane. Cell proteins are not detected in the virion envelope. Glycoproteins in the lipid bilayer of the envelope mediate attachment of virus to the host cell, surface, and penetration of virus into the cell and viral maturation and egress. A tegument exists between the capsid and the lipid bilayer. Within the capsid are DNA polyamines, and DNA-binding proteins.

Clinical problems result when infection of cells is followed by replication and spread of the virus. After the viral genome reaches the nucleus of the cell, expression of viral genes occurs in a highly regulated fashion. Cell death may result from viral infection and replication. Protease inhibition will block replication. *In vivo* infections of certain cells, in particular sensory neurons, does not necessarily result in replication of virus and cell death. A latent phase may occur.

Sequence arrangement of HSV-1 genome, the positions of U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and their transcripts and the structure of the test plasmids constructed for aspects of the present invention are shown in FIG. 1:

Line 1, -schematic representation of the sequence arrangement of the HSV-1 genome. U_L and U_S refer to the long unique and short unique sequences flanked by terminal inverted repeats shown as rectangles.

Lines 2 and 3, -genome map position, nucleotide numbers relative to the approximate transcription initiation site of U_L26 indicated by letter I at +1, and restriction endonuclease sites of the HSV-1 EcoRI-PstI DNA fragment. Line 3 also shows the position of the translational termination codon(T) and of the single poly(A) signal (A) which serve both the U_L26 and U_L26.5 RNAs.

Lines 4 and 5, -the filled rectangles (thick bars) represent the coding domains of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames. The numbers refer to the positions of the transcription initiation site, the translation initiation and termination codons and of the poly(A) signal for both open reading frames related to nucleotide +1 of U_L26.

Line 6 is a restriction endonuclease map drawn to scale with reference to lines A through Z and AA through NN which are schematic representations of the HSV-1 sequences contained in the plasmid constructs used in the studies described in this report. The construction of the plasmids shown schematically in lines A through Z and AA through NN are described in Example 1. The source of the α 4 promoter (open rectangle) shown in plasmids B, D, H, J, K, L, M, P, W, X, Z, AA through NN, was BamHI Z DNA fragment (Post et al., 1981) inserted in proper transcriptional orientation. The CMV epitope is shown as a filled oval. The oligonucleotide C with its complement is shown as a filled rectangle, and the new created PmlI site is marked as P*. The restriction endonuclease sites were abbreviated as follows: B, BamHI; Ba, BstEII; Bs, BstEII; E, EcoNI; H, HpaI; K, KpnI; Ms, MstII; P, PmlI; Ps, PstI; S, SalI; X, XmaI. Me represents the methionine translation initiation codon of the U_L26.5 open reading frame.

In order to identify the *in vitro* translation of U_L26 and U_L26.5 the unprocessed species of ICP35, open reading frames, both the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames were cloned into PGEM3Z-f(+) to derive plasmids T and U, respectively (FIG. 1). RNAs corresponding to the mRNAs of U_L26 and U_L26.5 were transcribed by Sp6RNA polymerase and translated in nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysates. The results indicated that U_L26 and U_L26.5 specify proteins each of which form double bands with apparent molecular weights of 80kd (P_{ra}) and 45kd (ICP35d, c), respectively. The two species of U_L26.5 (ICP35) protein synthesized *in vitro* were found to comigrate with ICP35c, d synthesized *in vitro* in HSV-1(F) infected cells. It was further found that the unprocessed forms of U_L26.5, that is ICP35c, and d, can be processed into ICP35e and f.

It was possible to map (localize) and purify the DNA sequences in the viral genome required for the processing of ICP35c, d into ICP35e, f. BHK cells were transfected with a series of plasmids containing different lengths of HSV-1 DNA sequences, each containing an intact ICP35 gene and superinfected with HSV-1(F) at 39°C. BHK cells transfected with the plasmid A containing the intact U_L26 gene (FIG. 1) generated ICP35e, f in addition to ICP35c, d whereas cells transfected with plasmid C in which the promoter region of U_L26 gene was deleted, and only the coding sequence of U_L26 was included (FIG. 1), generated only the unprocessed ICP35c, d. These results suggested that the gene product of U_L26 was required for the processing of ICP35, c, d into e, f.

The product of the gene U_L26 was found capable of cleaving ICP35c, d into e, f when present in the trans position. To determine whether U_L26 acts in *trans* or in *cis*, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid N as the substrate for processing and a series of plasmids containing deletions in the U_L26 open reading frame, and then infected with HSV-1(F) and maintained at 39°C. The results showed the following:

(i) ICP35c, d did not autocatalyze their own processing into ICP35e, f, inasmuch as the lysates of cells

co-transfected with plasmids N and E (FIG. 1) did not contain ICP35 forms e and f reactive with the CMV monoclonal antibody.

(ii) ICP35c, d were not processed in BHK cells cotransfected with plasmids N and C or I. Plasmids C and I contain deletions in the promoter region and at the polyadenylation site of the U_L26 open reading frame, respectively (FIG. 1).

(iii) ICP35c, d were processed into e, f in BHK cells co-transfected with plasmids N and A or B. Plasmids A and B contain the intact U_L26 promoter and open reading frame and the U_L26 coding sequence driven by the α 4 promoter, respectively. The α -transducing factor in HSV-1(F) induces the α 4 promoter to a high level (Post et al., 1981; Battreson and Roizman, 1983) at 39°C. The high level of expression of U_L26 may explain the presence of the processed forms of ICP35 (forms e and f) in lysates of cells co-transfected with plasmids N and B.

The importance of the protease encoded by U_L26 is indicated by the results showing it to be competent for the processing of ICP35c, d into e, f. It is shown that U_L26 and processing of ICP35d, d to e, f are both essential for capsid production because a mutation in that region (in the 5' end of the U_L26 ORF) was reported as lethal (Preston, et al., 1983).

Even more exciting from the perspective of use of the protease as a target for attack on herpes infections is that the protease appears to be the sole protein required for processing of ICP35c, d into e, f proteins required for capsid production. That indicates the protease is essential for capsid formation. To determine whether U_L26 is the only viral protein required for this processing and to exclude the possibility that viral genes expressed by the HSV-1(F) genome at 39°C contribute to the catalysis of ICP35, BHK cells were co-transfected with a constant amount of plasmid L and different amounts of plasmid B as the genes encoding the substrate and the enzyme for the processing, respectively. In plasmid L (FIG. 1) the U_L26.5 open reading frame was regulated by the α 4 promoter and the CMV epitope was inserted at the MstII restriction endonuclease site whereas plasmid B contained the intact U_L26 open reading frame driven by the same promoter. Because the α 4 is a strong eukaryotic promoter constitutively expressed in transfected cells (Post et al., 1981; Kristie and Roizman, 1984), expression of the U_L26.5 and U_L26 proteins in cells transfected with plasmid L and B did not require superinfection with HSV-1(F). The results were as follows:

(i) In the absence of viral infection, ICP35c and d were the only two species expressed in cells transfected with plasmid L. The epitopically marked ICP35 expressed by plasmid L was fully processed in cells superinfected with HSV-1(F) at permissive temperature. As expected plasmid B did not produce products reactive with anti CMV antibody.

(ii) In the presence of plasmid B containing U_L26, the epitopically marked ICP35c, d expressed by plasmid L were processed into ICP35e, f. At low concentrations of plasmid B, the extent of accumulation of ICP35e, f was directly proportional to the amount of U_L26 plasmid DNA co-transfected with plasmid L into BHK cells. The decrease in the amounts of ICP35e, f observed in the presence of the highest amounts of plasmid B may reflect competition between the two plasmids or reduced yield as a result of the toxicity used by high amounts of DNA.

From results of these studies it was concluded that the product of the U_L26 is the only viral factor both competent and sufficient to process ICP35c, d into ICP35e, f. The protease is, therefore, essential for capsid development, which in turn is essential for the herpes virus replication life cycle.

The active agents of such medicants include an inhibitor of the protease. The inhibitor may act to countermand the proteolytic action of an already available protease, or to disrupt or prevent the initiation of the translation or transcription of the nucleic acid segments responsible for protease production. The inhibitor may be in the form of a chemical composition, in which case it must be combined with a composition which effects cell incorporation.

If the inhibitor is in the form of nucleic acid segment, it may be incorporated into infected cells by any of the variety of methods well known to those of skill in the art. Those methods are disclosed herein and comprise transfection of a recombinant vector, electroporation, or use of a "gene gun" to force mechanically accelerated nucleic acid particles into infected cells.

Example 1

Construction of Plasmids and Their Relation To The HSV Genome

A set of plasmids were constructed to contain segments of nucleic acid sequences that could be manipulated to identify sections of the nucleic acid sequence of the HSV genome which control production of specific polypeptides, and to isolate those segments and purify their products.

These ingenious tools were created to identify and manipulate nucleic acid sequences involved in viral

infections. In some plasmids, markers were inserted at specific locations in order to trace the products of cleavage, to define nucleotide sequences used for various infective processes. The CMV epitope is shown as a filled oval in FIG. 1. The oligonucleotide C with its complement is shown as a filled rectangle. The newly created PmlI site is marked P. The restriction endonuclease sites are abbreviated as follows: B, *Bam*HI; Ba, *Bal*I; Bs, *Bst*EII; E, *Eco*NI; H, *Hpa*I; K, *Kpn*I; Ms, *Mst*II; P, *Pml*I; Ps, *Pst*I; S, *Sal*I; X, *Xma*I.

Collectively, the HSV-1 sequences carried in plasmids A through Z, AA through NN, contain deletions which encompass the entire domain of the U_L26 open reading frame. In some instances, e.g. plasmid constructs B and D the promoter of the $\alpha 4$ gene was juxtaposed in the form of the *Bam*HI Z fragment to force a higher level of transcription.

Plasmid constructs designated J through N in FIG. 1 carry in the HSV DNA's a sequence encoding a CMV epitope inserted into the unique *Mst*II site of these fragments. In all but one plasmid construct the *Bam*HI Z fragment was also inserted to augment transcription by the $\alpha 4$ promoter contained in this fragment. The exception was plasmid construct N.

In plasmid O and P the CMV epitope was inserted into the unique *Hpa*I site and only the P plasmid contains the $\alpha 4$ promoter in the form of the *Bam*HI Z fragment.

The following plasmids were constructed: A (pRB4057), B (pRB4060), C (pRB4058), D (pRB4089), E (pRB4093), F (pRB4056), G (pRB4087), H (pRB4088), I (pRB4026), J (pRB4092), K (pRB4094), L (pRB4096), M (pRB4095), N (pRB4102), O (pRB4079) and P (pRB4080), Q (pRB4140), R (pRB4184), S (pRB4185), T (pRB4103), U (pRB4090), V (pRB4186), W (pRB4188), X (pRB4213), Y (pRB4214), Z (pRB4215). pRB4026 was constructed by insertion of the HSV-1 fragment into the *Kpn*I site of pUC18. pRB4057 contains the entire encoding sequence of the U_L26 open reading frame, extending 3' from nucleotide -900 relative to the translation initiation site of the gene to approximately 650 nucleotides downstream from its polyadenylation site. pRB4060 was constructed by replacing the viral DNA sequence 23 bp upstream from the translation initiation site of the U_L26 open reading frame in pRB4057 with the HSV-1 DNA *Bam*HI Z fragment. The *Bam*HI Z fragment contains at one terminus, portions of the 5' transcribed noncoding sequences of the α 4 gene starting with nucleotide +33 and the upstream untranscribed domains of this gene. The *Bam*HI Z fragment was inserted in the orientation that would juxtapose the $\alpha 4$ promoter in the proper transcriptional orientation to the intact and truncated domains of the U_L26 open reading frame. pRB4056, pRB4058, pRB4087, and pRB4093 were derived from pRB4057, and pRB4088 and pRB4089 were derived from pRB4060 by generating deletions by the subcloning techniques described by Sambrook et al. (1989).

Two pairs of oligonucleotides, i.e., oligonucleotide A (5'-AAGGGACAGAAGCCCCAACCTGCTAGACCGACTGCGACACCGCAAAAACGGGTACCGA CAC-3') with its complement, oligonucleotide B (5'-AAAGG-GACAGAAGCCCCAACCTGCTAGACCGACTGCGACACCGCAAAAACGGGTACCG ACACGA-3') with its complement, and oligonucleotide C (5'-TCGACGTTGACACGGCCCGCGCCGCGATTCTTCTCTCTCAGATGATGGGGGCC GCCACGTGTGA-3'), were synthesized in Applied Biosystems DNA Synthesizer 380A (Foster City, Calif.). Oligonucleotides A,B and their complements encode the epitope of the CH28-2 monoclonal antibody and contain a *Kpn*I site at the 3' end for convenient screening of the oligonucleotide insertion in plasmids. pRB4079 and pRB4080 were derived by inserting the oligonucleotide A sequence into the unique *Hpa*I site of pRB4057 and pRB4060 respectively. pRB4092 was derived by inserting the oligonucleotide B sequence into the unique *Mst*II site of pRB4060. pRB4094, pRB4095, pRB4096, and pRB4102 were derived from pRB4092 by generating deletions by means of common subcloning techniques (Sambrook, et al., 1989). All insertion sites of these plasmids were sequenced to verify that the CMV epitope was inserted in the same frame as the U_L26 open reading frame.

Plasmid Q (pRB4140) was derived by inserting oligonucleotide A with its complement into the unique *Pml*I site of plasmid A. The sequence encodes the authentic U_L26 sequence from the *Pml*I site to the translation termination site but with the addition of a new *Pml*I site of the U_L26 open reading frame in the proper orientation resulted in the creation of a new *Pml*I site between the carboxyl terminal amino acid and the stop codon of the U_L26 open reading frame. In addition, the sequence 'GTG' at the authentic *Pml*I site has been changed to sequence 'GTC'. By insertion of the sequence C into the unique *Pml*I site of the U_L26 open reading from the proper orientation resulted in the creation of a new *Pml*I site between the carboxyl terminal amino acid and the stop codon of U_L26 . The original, authentic *Pml*I site was destroyed without changing the U_L26 amino acid sequence because the codon "GTG" and "GTC" encode the same amino acid. Therefore, the net effect of the insertion of oligonucleotide C with its complement to U_L26 open reading frame was that U_L26 had two additional amino acids between its authentic carboxyl terminal amino acid and its stop codon which were encoded by the new created *Pml*I recognition sequence. Plasmid R (pRB4184) was derived by inserting sequence C into the *Pml*I site of plasmids E (pRB4093), and S

(pRB4185) was derived by inserting the oligonucleotide A with its complement into the Pml site of plasmid R. Plasmids T, U, V and W (pRB4103, pRN4090, pRB4186 and pRB4188) were derived from plasmids B and S by subcloning. Plasmids X, Y and Z (pRB4213, pRB4214, and pRB4215) were constructed by inserting in frame into the U_L26 open reading frame at the site between the 3' end of the CMV sequence and the stop codon, either a sequence encoding 256 amino acids comprising five homologs of IgG binding domains of the staphylococcal protein A or a sequence encoding 129 amino acids and comprising two such domains. These sequences were the BclI-HincII fragment and HindIII-HincII fragment of the protein A gene fusion vector pRIT5 (Pharmacia, Piscataway, NJ), respectively. The vector for plasmids T, U, V, and Y was derived from PGEM3Zf(+) (Promega, Madison, WI) and these plasmids could be used as templates for *in vitro* transcription by T7 or Sp6 RNA polymerases. The vectors for all other plasmids were derived from pUC18 (New England Biolabs, MA). All the insertion sites of the oligonucleotide sequences A and C with their complement into the plasmids were sequenced to verify that the CMV epitope and the amino acid sequence encoded by oligonucleotide C with their complement were inserted in frame with the U_L26 open reading frame.

Constructs AA, BB, CC, DD and MM were prepared by inserting a translational stop codon into pRB4060 at PmlI, MstII, BssHII, HpaI sites, and the site encoding the translation initiation codon of ICP35, respectively. Construct NN was constructed by deletion of the sequence between the ICP35 translation initiation site and stop codon. The U_L26 ORF fused to BamHI Z cloned in pGEM3zf(+) as pRB4245 was mutagenized to give rise to II, JJ KK, LL, HH and GG with the aid of the Muta-Gene Kit (Bio-Rad) in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The 40 mer oligonucleotides used for this purpose were synthesized on an Applied Biosystems model 380B DNA synthesizer. Plasmids EE and FF were constructed by cleavage with XbaI and religation of constructs GG and HH to delete the first 10 and 33 amino acids of U_L26, respectively. The symbols used in FIG. 1 are as follows: Open quadrangle: the BamHI Z fragment used as the source of the α 4 promoter and inserted in the proper transcriptional orientation relative to that of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frame; filled oval: the 20 amino acid CMV epitope, described herein; filled rectangle: the DNA sequence encoding the IgG binding domain of protein A; P*: a new Pml site created in conjunction with the insertion of the IgG binding domain of protein A. The new translational initiation codons produced by *in vitro* mutagenesis are marked "ATG". The filled triangles represent the inserted stop codon. The restriction endonuclease sites were abbreviated as follows: B, BamHI; Ba, BstEII; Bs, BstEII; E, EcoNI; H, HpaI; K, KpnI; Ms, MstII; P, PmlI; Ps, PstI; S, SaI; X, XcmI. Me represents the methionine translation initiation codon of the U_L26.5 open reading frame.

A restriction endonuclease map is drawn to scale on-line 9 of FIG. 1 with reference to lines A through Z which are schematic representations of the HSV-1 sequences contained in the plasmid constructs used in the studies described herein.

Example 2

Use Of The Plasmids To Isolate And Purify Viral Components

Host cells were transfected with the plasmid constructs of FIG. 1. In addition, the protease was synthesized *in vitro* from rabbit reticulocyte lysate systems with the plasmids. Photographs of polypeptides from cells that were transfected with the plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, taken after the electrophoretic separation in polyacrylamide gels, electrical transferring to a nitrocellulose sheet, and reaction with goat anti-mouse immunoglobulin antibody coupled to peroxidase, were used to analyze the nucleic acid sequences responsible for the mechanisms of infection. Experimental details of the polypeptide purification are described in the Materials and Methods.

Constructs MM and NN were used to determine whether any ICP35 coding sequences in the protease are essential for ICP35 cleavage.

Example 3

Analysis 1 Transcriptional Units

The nucleotide sequences of U_L26 surprisingly and unexpectedly were found to be contained in two transcriptional units. Two probes were constructed to map the transcripts of U_L26. Probe 1, designed to identify the 5' terminus of the U_L26 in RNA, consisted of the EcoNI-BamHI fragment labelled at the BamHI site whereas probe 2 consisted of the XcmI-BstEII fragment labelled at the BstEII site.

An autoradiographic image of DNA probe 1 (A) and probe 2 (B) hybridized to total cytoplasmic RNA

from mock-infected and 12-h-infected Vero cells and digested with S1 nuclease, is presented in FIG. 3. The RNAs were prepared as described in the Materials and Methods herein. In FIG. 3, lane 1 (PS), an S1-digested probe 1 appears as it is under the same conditions of hybridization and digestion as those shown in lanes MOCK and HSV-1.

Lanes 2 and 8 (MOCK), shows RNA extracted from cells 12 h after mock infection. Lanes 3 and 9 (HSV-1), shows RNA extracted from cells infected with HSV-1(F) and maintained for 12 h.

Lanes 4 and 7 (P), indicate positions of the undigested probes (probe 1 or 2).

Lanes 5 and 7 (M), present 5' end-labeled fragments obtained from digestion of PGEM3Z DNA with the enzyme *MspI*.

Arrows in FIG. 3 indicate the protected 5' termini of U_L26(A) and U_L26.5(B) RNAs. T, Position of the HSV-1 sequences in probe 2 protected by the U_L26 RNA.

The results of the S1 analyses illustrated in FIG. 3 are that cytoplasmic RNA hybridized to probe 1 protected a fragment approximately 300 nucleotides long(lane 3).

Nucleotide 300 upstream from the *Bam*H1 site was designated as +1 of U_L26. The first methionine codon after the approximate transcription initiation site is at position +180.

Cytoplasmic RNA hybridized to probe 2 yielded two sets of fragments protected from S1 digestion (lane 9). The first fragment contained all of the HSV-1 DNA sequences(band T). The second set of protected fragments formed several bands ranging from 35-40 nucleotides in length(lane 2, band U_L26.5). Thus, the transcription initiation site of this transcript was approximately at nucleotide +1000 relative to nucleotide +1 of U_L26. The first methionine codon downstream from the transcription initiation site of this RNA was at position +1099. The longer RNA was designated U_L26.

Example 4

Location and Isolation Of The ICP 35 Gene

In order to localize the position of the coding domain of the gene specifying ICP35, a series of deletions in open reading frame U_L26 were tested for their capacity to express ICP35.

BHK cells were transfected with plasmid constructs O, N and P (FIG. 1) then infected with HSV-2 (FIG. 4). The letters across the top of the gel shown in FIG. 4 identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash or the absence of a letter indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The vertical lines identify the slow-migrating bands. The shortest fragment which yielded HSV-1 ICP35 was plasmid E(lane 2). Because this plasmid construct was expressed from its endogenous promoter, the results indicate that the sequences contained in the *Hpa*I-*Pst*I fragment contain both the coding sequences and the promoter of the gene encoding ICP35. Plasmid E contains all of the sequences of U_L26.5 RNA plus 168 nucleotides.

Example 5

Open Reading Frame Isolation And Characterization

In FIG. 5, a photograph of polypeptides extracted from cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, was taken after electrophoretical separation in polyacrylamide gels, electrical transferring to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacting with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash or the absence of a letter indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The vertical lines identify the slow-migrating bands.

FIG. 5 shows that BHK cells transfected with construct J,K, or L made a family of proteins which reacted with both anti-HSV-1 ICP35(H725) and anti-CMV(CH28-2) monoclonal antibodies. The formation of the characteristic four ICP35 bands by the products of transfection of plasmid construct L indicates that the initiating methionine codon for ICP35 is at position 1099.

These results indicate that the U_L26.5 coding sequences specifying ICP35 constitute a part of, and are in frame with, those of U_L26. In the preceding section it was shown that ICP35 could be expressed by transactivation of the DNA sequences contained in the *Hpa*I-*Pst*I fragment. Because plasmid construct E could be transactivated by HSV-2, it may also be concluded that the coding sequences of U_L26 include both the coding sequences and the promoter domain of the gene specifying ICP35.

Example 6

Use of Anti-CMV mAb

A photograph of polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1, was taken after electrophoretic separation in SDS polyacrylamide gels, electrical transferring to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacting with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). The letters across the top of the gel shown in FIG. 6 identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash or the absence of a letter indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The vertical lines identify the slow-migrating bands. These results indicate that use of the anti-CMV monoclonal antibody obviates the need to superinfect the cell with a heterologous virus.

Example 7

Identification, Isolation and Characterization of the Product of the U_L26 ORF

FIG. 7 presents autoradiographic images and a photograph of polypeptides from BHK cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, after the cells were electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. The vertical line and arrow identify the product of the U_L26 protein.

In FIG. 7, lanes 1, 2, and 3 are autoradiographic images of proteins labeled with [³⁵S]methionine as described in the Materials and Methods. The infected cell proteins (ICPs) of HSV-2 were numbered according to Morse et al. (1978).

Lanes 8, 9, and 10 show lysates of the same cells as shown in lane 4, 5, and 6 stained with H725 rather than with the CH28-2 monoclonal antibodies.

Lane 7 shows the lysate of cells transfected with plasmid construct J, in which U_L26 is driven by the α 4 promoter, infected with HSV-1(F) and maintained at 39°C. Under these conditions, only α and a few β proteins are expressed, but the ICP35 of HSV-1(F) is not expressed. The ICP35 in the HSV-1(F) viral genome is not expressed. The ICP35 encoded by the plasmid construct is expressed inasmuch as the transfected gene is regulated as a β gene.

In the preceding sections it was shown that the sequences encoding ICP35 overlapped only a portion of the sequence designated the U_L26 ORF. The purpose of the studies presented in the following sections was to identify the product of the full length U_L26 open reading frame. BHK cells were transfected with plasmid construct O, N, or P (FIG. 1), and then infected with HSV-2. The electrophoretically separated proteins from cells transfected with plasmids O, N, and P, were reacted with monoclonal antibodies to either HSV-1(H725) or CMV(CH28-2) (FIG. 7 lanes 4 through 6 and 8 through 10) and then autoradiographed to provide molecular weight markers (lanes 1 through 3). The salient features of the results were as follows:

(1) the plasmid constructs O and P containing the CMV epitope inserted in frame with U_L26 specified proteins which formed two bands with electrophoretic mobilities corresponding approximately to proteins with apparent molecular weights of 75,000 to 78,000 (FIG. 7, lanes 4 and 6). The CMV monoclonal antibody did not react with ICP35 bands produced by plasmids O and P (lanes 4 and 6). The CMV epitope was inserted at the *Hpa*I restriction endonuclease site (+832), i.e. before the translation initiation site of ICP35 at position +1099.

(2) All plasmid constructs made ICP35 which reacted with H725 monoclonal antibody against HSV-1 ICP35. The disparity in the electrophoretic mobilities of the ICP35 proteins made by plasmid constructs N and P reflect the insertion into plasmid construct N of the oligonucleotide encoding an additional 21 amino acids.

(3) The abundance of proteins specified by the entire U_L26 ORF relative to that of the ICP35 protein may be deduced from the observation that while both of the Mr75,000-78,000kd proteins and the ICP35 react with the same monoclonal antibody, CH28-2, the reactivity or amount of the larger protein is considerably lower than that observed for ICP35.

The compelling evidence that the two proteins share amino acid sequences is based on the observation that construct J under conditions of overproduction of the U_L26 proteins yielded proteins which co-migrated with both the larger protein and ICP35 and reacted with the CH28-2 monoclonal antibody (arrow, FIG. 7, lane 7).

Example 8

Characterization of U_L26 and U_L26.5 Proteins

An autoradiographic image of the ^{35}S -methionine labeled polypeptides translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate and electrophoretically separated in a 9.5% denaturing polyacrylamide gel are shown in FIG. 8.

In lane 1 are translation products of bromo mosaic virus templates provided with a kit obtained from Promega Biotec, WI as transcribed according to the manufacturer's suggestions. Lane 2 shows translation products of the U_L26 open reading frame in plasmid U. Lane 3 shows the translation product of the $U_L26.5$ open reading frame in plasmid T. These results indicated that U_L26 and $U_L26.5$ specify proteins each of which form double bonds with apparent molecular weights of 80,000kd (*Pra*) and 45,000 (ICP35d,c) respectively.

Example 9

The Gene Product of U_L26 Is Required to Process ICP35c,d into e,f in Transposition

A photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from BHK cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C (34°) or at 39°C (39°), electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 to HSV-1 ICP35 (HSV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase, is presented in FIG. 9. Experimental details are described in the Materials and Methods herein. The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The letters on the side were assigned to different species of ICP according to Braun et al. (1984).

The ICP35 bands e and f are the products of the cleavage of the proteins in bands c and d. The proteins migrating in bands c', d', e' and f' contain the CMV epitope and therefore migrate more slowly than the authentic proteins in bands c, d, e and f, respectively.

Earlier experiments suggested that ICP35c, d were the precursors of ICP35e, f (Braun et al., 1984; Preston et al., 1983). To test this hypothesis, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid E containing $U_L26.5$ gene (FIG. 1) and superinfected with HSV-1(F) at 39°C . This virus is temperature sensitive and at 39°C it does not express its own U_L26 and $U_L26.5$ open reading frames. The results (FIG. 10) show the following:

(1) The ICP35 gene resident in the viral genome was expressed at 34°C (lane 1) but not at 39°C (lane 2) as evidenced by the presence and absence of the ICP35 bands reactive with the H725 monoclonal antibody to ICP35, respectively.

(2) ICP35c, d were the only two species of ICP35 proteins expressed from the one reading frame in plasmid E at 39°C (lane 4), whereas at least ICP35c, d, e and f could be detected in lysates of productively infected cells maintained at 34°C (lane 1).

These results led to the conclusion that:

- (a) ICP35c, d are the unprocessed forms of the ICP35 proteins; that
- (b) they can be processed into ICP35e, f; and that
- (c) the processing requires a *trans*acting factor because processing did not occur in the absence of HSV-1(F) late gene expression.

Example 10

U_L26 Can Act in *trans* to Process ICP35c and -d into ICP35e and -f and U_L26 Is Competent and the Only Viral Protein Required for the Processing of ICP35c and -d into ICP35e and -f

To determine whether U_L26 acts in *trans* or in *cis*, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid N as the substrate for processing and with a series of plasmids containing deletions in the U_L26 open reading frame, infected with HSV-1(F), and maintained at 39°C . The results (FIG. 10A) showed the following:

(i) ICP35c and -d did not autocatalyze their processing into ICP35e and -f, inasmuch as the lysates of cells cotransfected with plasmid N and E (FIG. 1) did not contain ICP35e and -f reactive with the CMV monoclonal antibody (lane 8).

(ii) ICP35c and -d were not processed in BHK cells cotransfected with plasmids N and C or I (lanes 7 and 6). Plasmids C and I contain deletions in the promoter region and at the polyadenylation site of the U_L26 open reading frame, respectively (FIG. 1).

(iii) ICP35c and -d were processed into ICP35e and -f in BHK cells cotransfected with plasmids N and A or B. Plasmids A and B contain the intact U_L26 promoter and open reading frame and the U_L26 coding sequence driven by the $\alpha 4$ promoter, respectively (lanes 5 and 4). The α -transducing factor is HSV-1(F)

induces the $\alpha 4$ promoter to a high level at 39°C. The high level of expression of U_L26 may explain the presence of the processed forms of ICP35 (forms e and f) in lysates of cells cotransfected with plasmids N and B (lane 4).

The results indicate that U_L26 encodes a protein involved in the processing of ICP35c and -d into ICP35e and -f.

To determine whether U_L26 is the only viral protein required for this processing to exclude the possibility that viral genes expressed by the HSV-1(F) genome at 39°C contribute to the catalysis of ICP35, BHK cells were cotransfected with a constant amount of plasmid L and different amounts of plasmid B as the genes encoding the substrate and the enzyme for the processing, respectively. In plasmid L (FIG. 1), the U_L26.5 open reading frame was regulated by the $\alpha 4$ promoter and the CMV epitope was inserted at the *Mst*II restriction endonuclease site, whereas plasmid B contained the intact U_L26 open reading frame driven by the same promoter. Since the $\alpha 4$ promoter is a strong eukaryotic promoter constitutively expressed in transfected cells (Kristie & Roizman, 1991; Post et al., 1981), expression of the U_L26.5 and U_L26 proteins in cells transfected with plasmids L and B did not require superinfections with HSV-1(F). The results (FIG. 10B) were as follows:

- (i) In the absence of viral infection, ICP35c and -d were the only two species expressed in cells transfected with plasmid L (lane 17). The epitopically marked ICP35 expressed by plasmid L was fully processed in cells superinfected with HSV-1(F) at the permissive temperature (lane 18). As expected, plasmid B did not produce products reactive with the anti-CMV antibody (lane 11).
- (ii) In the presence of plasmid B containing U_L26, the epitopically marked ICP35c and -d expressed by plasmid L were processed into ICP35e and -f. At low concentrations of plasmid B, the extent of accumulation of ICP35e and -f was directly proportional to the amount of U_L26 plasmid DNA cotransfected with plasmid L into BHK cells (lanes 12 to 16). The decrease in the amounts of ICP35e and -f observed in the presence of the highest amounts of plasmid B may reflect competition between the two plasmids or reduced yield as a result of the toxicity caused by the high amounts of DNA.

The conclusion from these studies that the product of U_L26 is the only viral factor both competent and sufficient to process ICP35c and -d into ICP35 e and -f.

Example 11

The Protease Effects Carboxyl Terminal Cleavage

A photograph of polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmids and either mock-infected or superinfected with HSV-1(F) (HSV-1) or HSV-2(G) (HSV-2) either at 34°C (34°, lanes 1 and 4), at 39°C (39°, lanes 2 and 5), or at 37°C (lanes 3 and 6-14), electrophoretically separated in denaturing polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV-Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled with peroxidase, is presented in FIG. 11. The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected.

Another aspect of this invention is the type of cleavage effected by the protease. Processing of ICP35c, d to e, f involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage.

Inasmuch as ICP35e, f specified by plasmid N comigrated in denaturing gels with ICP35c, d produced in HSV-1 infected cells (FIG. 10, Panel A, lanes 1 and 5), it may be deduced that the portion of the ICP35 cleaved during processing is roughly equivalent to the size of the CMV amino acid sequence inserted into plasmid N. To determine whether ICP35 processing involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage, BHK cells were transfected with plasmids J, R, S and W and superinfected with HSV-2. Plasmid R contained the CMV epitope (sequence A) inserted in the *Pml*I site of U_L26.5 whereas in plasmids S and W the insert was at the carboxyl terminal amino acid. Analyses of the electrophoretic separated, electrically transferred polypeptides with the anti HSV-1 (H725) and anti CMV (CH28-3) monoclonal antibodies revealed the following (FIG. 11):

- (1) Cells transfected with plasmid J in which the CMV epitope was inserted at the *Mst*II site 122 amino acids upstream from the U_L26 stop codon made both the precursor ICP35c, d and products ICP35 e, f which reacted with the CMV antibody (lane 8). The decrease in the electrophoretic mobility of ICP35c, d, e and f relative to the wild type proteins corresponds to the increase in the molecular weight due to the insertion of the CMV epitope.
- (2) Only ICP35c, d were made in cells transfected with plasmid Q (Lanes 3 and 6). In this plasmid the CMV epitope was inserted into the *Pml*I site of U_L26, which is 21 amino acids upstream from U_L26.5 stop codon. The identification of the ICP35c, d forms was based on the observation that they co-migrated with

the corresponding forms specified by plasmid L which expressed only ICP35c, d in transfected cells (FIG. 10, Panel B, lane 17).

(3) Insertion of sequence C into plasmid R at *Pml*I restriction endonuclease site destroyed this site and created a new *Pml*I cleavage site between the carboxyl terminal amino acid and the stop codon of U_L26 without changing the amino acid sequences of either U_L26 or U_L26.5. ICP35c, d, e and f detected with H725 monoclonal antibody co-migrated with the authentic proteins (lane 11), indicating the insertion of sequence C had no effect on ICP35 expression and processing.

(4) In plasmid S and W the CMV epitope was inserted into the new *Pml*I site of plasmid R at the carboxyl terminus of U_L26.5. Cells transfected with these plasmids accumulated ICP35c, d e, and f reactive with HSV-1 H725 monoclonal antibody (lanes 10, 14) but only the ICP35c and d forms reacted with the CMV CH28-2 monoclonal antibody (lanes 9, 14). The significant finding is that whereas ICP35c, and d forms of plasmid S co-migrated with the corresponding forms of plasmid J, i.e. they were 21 amino acids longer than wild type, the ICP 35e, f indicating that the inserted amino acid sequence encoding the CMV epitope was removed (lanes 9 and 10). The products specified by plasmid W behaved in the same manner (FIG. 11). ICP35e, and f specified by plasmid W were more abundant than those specified by plasmids S and R possibly because in plasmid W the entire U_L26 open reading frame was reconstituted and more of the protein product was expressed and made available to process ICP35.

The cleavage of the precursor ICP35 protein is approximately 20 amino acids from the carboxyl terminal codon. Evidence for this conclusion was that

(1) insertion of the CMV epitope 21 amino acids from the terminus interfered with the cleavage, whereas insertion of the epitope at the carboxyl terminus enabled the cleavage to take effect;

(2) the comigration of ICP35e', and f' (with CMV epitope) and ICP35c, d. The comigration places the CMV-inserted e and f in the same approximate gel location as c, d in the authentic protease.

An unexpected correlation between the cleavage mechanism used to produce the ICP35 subunits and to autoprocess the U_L26 protease was that both involve carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage. In the preceding sections, it was demonstrated that U_L26 is the only viral factor responsible for the carboxyl terminal proteolytic processing of ICP35. U_L26 coding for the protease and U_L26.5 coding for ICP35 also share the same carboxyl terminal amino acid sequence. The possibility that U_L26 cleaves itself emerged from the observation that in BHK cells transfected with plasmid P (FIG. 1) and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C or at 39°C expressed a doublet band of U_L26 (FIG. 11, lane 4 and 5) which reacted with CH28-2 monoclonal antibody. This observation suggested the possibility that U_L26 may catalyze its own cleavage because HSV-1(F) expresses primarily α genes at 39°C.

Example 12

The Protease Cleaves Itself

In FIG. 12 an autoradiographic image of ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by U_L26 open reading frame, and electrophoretically separated in a denaturing polyacrylamide gel, is shown. The U_L26 open reading frame contained in plasmids U and V (FIG. 1) was transcribed *in vitro* and translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate. The lanes shown represent positions removed from the translation mixture at 10, 20, 90, and 360 minutes post initiation of translation. For samples shown in lanes 4-7 and 12-15, cycloheximide was added to the translation mixture at 10 minutes post initiation of translation to inhibit further translation. In the case of lanes 1-3, the translation mixture at 10 minutes post initiation of translation was diluted 10-fold in phosphate-buffered saline containing cycloheximide (100 µg/ml).

Additional evidence that U_L26 can catalyze its own cleavage emerged from *in vitro* studies. RNA transcribed from plasmids U or V (FIG. 1) *in vitro* by T7 or Sp6 RNA polymerases were translated in a nuclease treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate in the presence of [³⁵S]-methionine. Analyses of the electrophoretically separated products of the translation reaction were as follows (FIG. 12):

(1) Incubation of the translation products of the U plasmid in the presence of cycloheximide resulted in gradual accumulation of the cleavage product (*Prb*) of the U_L26 protein. The amount of accumulated cleavage product was proportional to the duration of the incubation (lanes 16-19).

(2) Identical results were obtained with the translation of products of plasmid V. The significance of this experiment stems from the presence of the CMV epitope at the carboxyl terminus of U_L26. As expected, the precursor form of U_L26 made from plasmid V migrated more slowly than the authentic protein derived from plasmid U. However, the processed form of U_L26 synthesized from plasmid V co-migrated with that of the authentic protein from plasmid U, indicating that the U_L26 autoprocessing involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage.

Example 13

Cleavage of ICP35c,d and Pra are Sequence Specific and are at the Same Site

5 Autoradiographic images (FIG. 13, Panel A) and a photograph of polypeptides (FIG. 13, Panel B) either synthesized *in vitro* from sequences encoded in plasmids U or Y or contained in lysates of cell transfected with plasmids X or Z and superinfected with HSV-1(F) or HSV-1(G) are presented in FIG. 13. The *in vitro* synthesized polypeptides and those contained in cell lysates were electrophoretically separated in the same denaturing 12% polyacrylamide gel, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, and reacted with
 10 monoclonal antibody anti-mouse IgG conjugated with horseradish peroxidase (Anti-IgG) only, or with this anti-IgG antibody in addition to the monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). A dash indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The polypeptides shown in panel A were labeled with ³⁵S-methionine. The band designations were as follows: Letters c, d, e, f, without primes identify authentic ICP35 products of U_L26.5 open reading frame. *Pra* and *Prb* are the translation processed forms of
 15 the protease products of the U_L26 open reading frame. The double and triple primes indicate that the protein also contains the CMV epitope and the sequence encoding two IgG and five IgG binding domains of staphylococcus protein A, respectively. PA" and PA'" are the carboxyl terminus products of the cleavage of the ICP35c, d and *Pra* proteins containing inserts of CMV epitope and IgG binding domains.

The cleavage of ICP35c, d and *Pra* are sequence-specific and are at the same site. The results of the
 20 experiments presented herein suggested that the cleavage/processing of the products of U_L26 and U_L26.5 occurred at a site approximately 18-25 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus of the proteins. To demonstrate that the processing of these proteins occurs at the predicted site, it was necessary to demonstrate both products of the cleavage reaction on the same gel. In order to visualize both products, it was necessary to insert into the coding sequence at the predicted carboxyl terminus both the epitope for
 25 the CMV monoclonal antibody and the sequences encoding the IgG binding domains of staphylococcal protein A. Plasmids X and Z were constructed by inserting in frame the sequences coding for 129 and 256 amino acids comprising two and five IgG binding domains of protein A, respectively, in frame between the 3' terminus of the CMV epitope and the stop codon of U_L26 (FIG. 1).

Two experiments were done. In the first, the HSV-1 open reading frames in plasmids U and Y were
 30 transcribed and translated for six hours. The proteins translated *in vitro* were then electrophoretically separated in a denaturing gel (FIG. 13, Panel A). In the second experiment, BHK cells were transfected with plasmids Z or X and then superinfected with HSV-2(G). The cell lysates were electrophoretically separated in the same gel as that used for the separation of the *in vitro* translated protein, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, and reacted with antibody to CMV, HSV, or with anti-IgG antibody that would bind to
 35 IgG binding domains of protein A (FIG. 13, Panel B). The results were as follows:

- (i) Autocatalytic processing of the *in vitro* transcribed, translated HSV-1 sequences in plasmid U yielded as expected the protein bands designated as *Pra* and *Prb*. Similar autocatalytic processing of the products of the Z band yielded three bands. The first band migrated slower than the authentic precursor *Pra* band, as would be expected from the presence of additional 256 amino acids of protein A and the 21
 40 amino acids constituting the CMV epitope. The second band co-migrated with the *Prb* band and is therefore the product of the autocatalytic cleavage of the translation product. The third band co-migrated with the bands described below and which reacted with the CMV as well as with the anti-IgG antibody.
- (ii) the expected translation products of the plasmid X were ICP35c, d and *Pra*. It could be expected that the translation products of the plasmid Z should be similar except that, because of the smaller inserts of
 45 the protein A sequences, these proteins should migrate correspondingly faster than those of the plasmid X. This was in fact the case (compare lanes 3,5 and 8 with those of 4, 6 and 9). It could also be predicted that if the cleavage of the ICP35c, d, occurs as expected 20 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus of the authentic protein, that the amino terminus products of the cleavage reaction should co-migrate with the authentic ICP35 and react only with the HSV-1 monoclonal antibody. This was in fact
 50 the case inasmuch as ICP35e and f produced by plasmid Z and X (lanes 5 and 6) co-migrate with the authentic ICP35e and f (lane 7) and were detectable solely by the HSV-1 specific monoclonal antibody. Conversely, it could be expected that the carboxyl terminus products of the cleavage reaction should migrate in accordance with their size, and should react with both anti IgG and CMV antibodies. As shown in Panel B of FIG. 7 the bands reactive with the anti IgG antibody from lysates of cell transfected with
 55 plasmid X migrated slower than the corresponding Z bands. However, because all of the carboxyl terminal cleavage products contained the IgG binding domains of protein A, all of the protein products would be expected to react with IgG irrespective of specificity of the immunoglobulin (e.g., bands 5 and 6).

Inasmuch as both products were detected, the results indicate that ICP35c, d and *Pra*, the products of the U_L26.5 and U_L26, respectively, are both translationally processed by cleavage. Because the two proteins share amino acid sequences for the entire length of ICP35c, d and because the products of the cleavage of the two proteins co-migrate, the two proteins are cleaved at identical sites. Finally, the translational products of both open reading frames *in vitro* resolve into double bands. The double bands are particularly noticeable in the case of ICP35 (forms c and d). In all of the experiments done to date including those shown in FIG. 11 the carboxyl terminal product of the cleavage formed a single band. This observation is consistent with the hypothesis that the differences in the proteins which form the doublets are at the amino rather than the carboxyl termini of the proteins.

Example 14

Expression System of Protease as an Assay

Shown in FIG. 14 is the autoradiographic image of ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by U_L26 open reading frame electrophoretically separated in a denaturing gel. The U_L26 open reading frame contained in plasmid U and Y (FIG. 1) was transcribed *in vitro* and translated in nuclease treated rabbit reticulocyte lysates. Lane 1 shown represents the portion removed from the translation mixture at 360 minutes post initiation of translation. Lanes 2-5 shown represent portions removed from the translation mixture either at 10 minutes (0) or at 360 minutes (360) post initiation of translation. For samples shown in lanes 2-5, the equivalent amount of translation mixture at 10 minutes post initiation of translation was diluted 20-fold in phosphate-buffered saline containing cycloheximide (100 microgram/ml) and either sodium dodecyl sulphate (SDS) (0.4%) (lane 3) or phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride (PMSF) (500 micrograms/ml) (lane 4).

As shown in FIG. 14, PMSF was capable of partially inhibiting the protease self-cleavage. In lane 5, normal self cleavage is shown. In line 3, there is 100% inhibition by SDS. The interpretation of Fig. 14 is that 1) SDS, a denaturing detergent, completely inhibits protease activity (lane 3); 2) the protease can self-cleave in the absence of a protease inhibitor; and 3) there is partial inhibition of protease by PMSF, a serine protease inhibitor.

Example 15

Characterization of Domains of the Protease Protein

Characteristics of the protease protein include: (i) it contains several domains which are not required for its catalytic activity and (ii) the active site is near the amino terminus of the protease.

The experimental design employed to arrive at these characteristics was based on two observations. First, insertion of additional amino acid sequences including the IgG binding domains from staphylococcal protein A into the carboxyl terminus of the protease does not interfere with the self cleavage of the protease, but yields a readily detectable product of the reaction. Second, insertion of the sequence encoding a 20 amino acid epitope of human cytomegalovirus monoclonal antibody in frame into the coding domains of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 ORFs serves two purposes. Foremost, it serves to identify specifically the products of these ORFs. Second, by separating the various domains of the protease, it serves to identify regions of the protease which must be contiguous for its catalytic function.

A. Delineation of the functional domains of the UL26 protein.

Three sets of mutants of the U_L26 protease (Table I) were used to explore the protease domains. Set 1 was prepared for mapping of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and consisted of 3 U_L26 genes into which were inserted in frame at various sites, DNA sequences encoding a 20 amino acid CMV epitope.

The second set consisted of 10 U_L26 gene constructs with either stop codons or deletions spanning various regions of the gene (Table I).

Set 3 consists of 6 U_L26 genes containing substitutions in predicted amino acid sequences starting in the region of amino acids 7 to 215. As described in the following sections, the U_L26 gene in each of these plasmids was expressed from an α4 promoter. The target of the protease was usually the U_L26.5 gene cloned in plasmid L (FIG. 1) and containing in frame the CMV epitope insert. The exceptions, clones P and J contained the U_L26 gene containing the CMV epitope either in the coding sequence of both the U_L26 and U_L26.5 gene (plasmid J) or only in the U_L26 coding domain (plasmid P).

Typically, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid L and one of the plasmids encoding a protease, and superinfected with HSV-1(F) at 39 °C. The cell lysates were electrophoretically separated in denaturing gels, transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted with the HSV monoclonal antibody H725 which reacts with all U_L26.5 products and CMV monoclonal antibody CH28-2 which reacts only with the U_L26.5 products which contain the CMV epitope (see FIG. 15). Because the HSV-1(F) contains a temperature sensitive lesion in the α 4 genes specifying the major HSV-1 regulatory protein, it does not express its own U_L26 protease or substrate at 39 °C. However, the α -gene *trans*-inducing factor (VP16) is functional at higher temperatures (Post et al., 1981; Batterson et al., 1983) and transactivates the expression of the genes specifying both the protease (U_L26) and the substrate (U_L26.5). The results (FIG. 15) were as follows:

- (1) The U_L26.5 gene resident in the viral genome yielded protein bands reactive with the HSV monoclonal antibody at 34 °C (lanes 1 and 14) but not at 39 °C (lanes 2 and 15). Furthermore, the presence of the products of proteolytic cleavage (bands e and f) indicate that the viral protease encoded by U_L26 was also made at 34 °C.
- (2) The U_L26 protease encoded in the viral genome was not expressed at 39 °C (lane 3). Thus in the absence of the plasmid encoding the protease, the substrate encoded by plasmid L was made (bands c, d) but not cleaved to yield bands e, f indicating that the proteases encoded in the viral genome was not expressed at the non permissive temperature.
- (3) Only the precursor forms of ICP35 c, d derived from plasmid L accumulated in cells transfected with the mutated U_L26 genes in plasmids H (lane 4), G (lane 5), CC (lane 7), D (lane 9), DD (lane 11), FF (3 lane 13), and II (lane 21), and JJ (lane 23). In these plasmids, the protease activity of the gene product was inactivated.
- (4) Both the precursor and product forms of ICP35 derived from Plasmid L accumulated in cells transfected with the mutated U_L26 genes AA (lanes 6), B (FIG. 15, lane 8), BB (lane 10), EE (lane 12), GG (lane 20), HH (3 lane 19), and KK (lane 22), P (lane 25), MM (lane 26) and NN (lane 27).
- (5) As noted above, in plasmid P the 20 amino acid epitope was inserted after the amino acid 218, i.e. upstream from the coding domain of the substrate protein encoded by U_L26.5. The protease encoded by plasmid P cleaved itself (lanes 16, 17) and ICP 35 (lane 25). Plasmid J contained the CMV insert after the amino acid 514 (FIG. 1). In the assays (lane 18), it cleaved the product of the U_L26 encoded in plasmid J itself. The only cleavage product detected in this assay was band e. Because the epitope was also inserted into the U_L26.5 protein, it is conceivable that the inserted 20 amino acid epitope interfered with, and diminished the efficiency of, the cleavage. The protease encoded by plasmid Q (FIG. 1 and Table I) encodes a protease which cleaved the product of the U_L26 genes specified by other plasmids, but not by the gene encoded in its own domain

TABLE IList of mutations in the gene encoding the U_L26 protease

Designation Mutation introduced into wild type gene

Insertion Mutants (20 amino acid CMV epitope)

P Insertion after amino acid 218.

J Insertion after amino acid 514.

Q Insertion after amino acid 615.

Construction of deletion mutants

D Deletion of amino acids 1-220.

G Deletion of amino acid 219-615.

EE Deletion of amino acids 1-9.

FF Deletion of amino acids 1-32.

AA Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 615

BB Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 514

CC Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 287

DD Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 218

MM Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 306

NN Deletion of amino acid 307-635

Amino acid substitutionsGG Gly₇AspArg with SerArgThr (new XbaI site)*HH Asp₃₁SerGly with LeuAspMet (new XbaI site)II His₆₁ with Val (new AatII site).JJ His₁₄₈ with Ala (new PstI site).KK Ser₂₁₅ with Ala (new NheI site).LL Asp₃₄ with Ala (new NheI site)

* The substituted sequences were as follows: plasmid GG: CCGGGAGACCGATG with CCGTCTAGAACCATG; plasmid HH: TATGACAGCGGGGAC with TATCTAGACATGGAC; plasmid II: GACCAACCGC with GACGTCCGC; plasmid JJ: GCGCACGTC with GCTGCAATC; plasmid KK: ACOCTTTCCACC with ACGCTAGCCACC; plasmid LL: GGGGACTCCGGG with GGGGCTAGCGGC.

because the epitope inserted after amino acid 615 interfered with the cleavage.

FIG. 16. is a summary in the form of a schematic representation of the results of the mutagenesis studies. The numbers refer to the amino acid numbers predicted from the nucleotide sequence of the U_L26 ORF reported by McGeoch et al. (1988). The amino acids shown for insertion are immediately preceding the site of insertion. The amino acids are identified by a single letter code. Open symbols indicates that the

protease was functional. Closed symbols indicates the protease was inactivated by mutagenesis. The line at the bottom of the figure identifies the domains of the protease (Nos. I-IV) The restriction endonuclease sites were abbreviated as follows: B: BstEII, H: HpaI, M: MstII, P: PmlI. Me represents the methionine translation initiation codon of U_L26.5 open reading frame.

5

B. Characteristics of the domains of the U_L26 protease.

The results shown in FIG. 15 and summarized in FIG. 16 indicate that the U_L26 protease consists of 4 domains of which two are dispensable and two are not. The dispensable domains I and IV extend from amino acid 1 through 9, but not to 32, and from the carboxyl terminus (amino acid 635) to at least 307 but not to amino acid 287, respectively. The domain No. III appears to extend from at least amino acid 218 to at most amino acid 306. This domain can be displaced by at least 20 amino acids (CMV epitope insertion after amino acid 218) relative to the amino terminal portion of the protease. Domain No. II is also not dispensable and apparently is located between amino acids 10 and 218.

15

C. The catalytic domain of the U_L26 protease.

The studies with protease inhibitors suggest that the U_L26 could be predicted to belong to either the chymotrypsin or subtilisin superfamilies of serine proteases (Kraut, 1977; Neurath, 1983). A shared property of the two serine protease superfamilies are active sites containing histidine, aspartic acid, and serine amino acids.

The substrate of the protease, ICP35 has been reported to play a role as a scaffolding protein in the assembly of the HSV capsid (Newcomb et al., 1991). The sequence of events in the replication of other herpes viruses is similar, and homologues of ICP35 have been reported (Robson and Gibson, 1989). Of particular interest was the question whether homologues of the U_L26ORF in other herpes viruses contained conserved histidine, aspartic acid and serine amino acids which triad plays a role in the proteolytic activity of U_L26 protease.

Nucleotide sequence comparisons indicate that the ORF 33 of varicella zoster virus and the CMV U_L80 ORF of human cytomegalovirus encode homologues of the U_L26 ORF of HSV-1 (McGeoch et al., 1988; Chee et al., 1990; Davison and Scott, 1986). The amino acid sequence comparison between HSV U_L26, CMV U_L80 and VZV gene 33 protein indicated the amino terminus is the most conserved domain of the U_L26 protease. The conclusion that the protease maps in the amino proximal domain of the U_L26 ORF is consistent with the observation that ICP35, the product of U_L26.5 ORF, is devoid of enzymatic activity. To explore the conserved amino acids in the amino proximal domain of U_L26, the substitutions in the amino acids encoded in plasmids GG, II, JJ, KK and LL probed Asp₃₁Ser₃₂, Asp₃₄, His₆₁, His₁₄₈, and Ser₂₁₅. The results indicated that the only amino acids whose substitutions abolished enzymatic activity were the conserved histidines at positions 61 and 148. In anticipation of more defined mapping studies, the catalytic domain of the protease most likely maps in domain II of the U_L26 protease.

D. The function of the other domains of U_L26 protease.

The functions of the domains I, II and III are not known. Because the substrate, ICP35 aggregates to form the scaffolding of the HSV capsids, it is likely that the protease is also involved in the scaffolding and that at least domain III and possibly also I and IV are required to complex with ICP35.

45

Example 16

The U_L26 gene encodes a serine protease

The 20 amino acid CMV epitope described herein and the 256 amino acid IgG binding domain of protein A (plasmid Y, FIG. 1) were inserted between the terminal amino acid and the stop codon of U_L26 ORF. Transcripts of the coding domain of plasmid Y by the Sp6 RNA polymerase were translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate in the presence of [³⁵S]-methionine for 10 min. The cycloheximide was added to stop further translation and, the translation product of the Y plasmid was incubated for another 6 hours to allow self-cleavage in the presence of protease inhibitors. The products of the reaction were then electrophoretically separated on denaturing polyacrylamide gels. Autoradiographic images of the electrophoretically separated polypeptides translated *in vitro* in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate from the synthetic RNAs transcribed *in vitro* off the U_L26 ORF cloned in plasmid construct Y are shown in

55

FIG. 17. The lanes shown represent portions denatured for electrophoresis immediately after the 10 minute synthesis (lane 15, 28) or after an additional 6 hours of reaction in the presence of cycloheximide (100 μ g/ml) alone or with protease inhibitors (μ M) shown (lanes 1-4, 16-27, and 29-47). All the protease inhibitors were dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) prior to use.

The results (FIG. 17) were as follows:

(1) The products of the 10 minute translation formed a single labeled polypeptide band containing the uncleaved protease (Pra) (lanes 15 and 28).

(2) After six hours of reaction in the presence of cycloheximide (100 μ g/ml) but in the absence of protease inhibitors, the translation mixture formed three bands corresponding to the intact translation product (Pra), the amino terminal (Prb), and the carboxyl terminal (PA) portions of the cleavage products of the translation (lanes 9, 10, 21, 22, and 33).

(3) The amounts of cleavage products, Prb and PA were reduced in translation mixtures reacted in the presence of cycloheximide and the lower concentrations of the serine protease inhibitors diisopropyl fluorophosphate (DFP, Sigma, St. Louis, MI), L-1-tosylamido-2-phenylethyl chloromethyl ketone (TPCK, Sigma), *N*- α -p-tosyl-L-lysine chloromethyl ketone (TLCK, Sigma), phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride (PMSF, Sigma), and chymostatin (Boehringer Mannheim, Indianapolis, IN). At the highest concentrations tested the digestion products were not detected (lane 1, 29, 34, 39, and 44).

(4) The cleavage of the translation product (Pra) was not affected by the cysteine protease inhibitors iodoacetic acid (Sigma) and cystatin (Boehringer Mannheim; lanes 5-9, 22-27), by ethyleneglycol-bis (β -aminoethyl ether), N, N, N', N'-tetraacetic acid (EGTA), a chelator and inhibitor of metalloprotease (lanes 12-14), or by the aspartic acid protease inhibitor pepstatin (Boehringer Mannheim; lanes 15-21).

These results are consistent with the hypothesis that U_L26 gene product is a serine protease.

Example 17

Detection of a Candidate Inhibitor Substance

In still further embodiments, the present invention concerns a method for identifying new herpes viral protease inhibitory compounds, which may be termed as "candidate substances." It is contemplated that this screening technique will prove useful in the general identification of any compounds that will serve the purpose of inhibiting the herpes protease. It is further contemplated that useful compounds in this regard will in no way be limited to proteinaceous or peptidyl compounds. In fact, it may prove to be the case that the most useful pharmacologic compounds for identification through application of the screening assay will be non-peptidyl in nature and, e.g., which will be recognized and bound by the enzyme, and serve to inactivate the enzyme through a tight binding or other chemical interaction.

Thus, in these embodiments, the present invention is directed to a method for determining the ability of a candidate substance to inhibit a herpes protease, the method including generally the steps of:

- (a) obtaining a composition comprising a herpes protease that is capable of cleaving its own amino acid sequence, or cleaving the ICP35 protein or any amino acid sequence containing the cleavage site for this protease;
- (b) admixing a candidate substance with the protease composition; and
- (c) determining the ability of the protease to effect cleavage in the presence of the candidate substance.

An important aspect of the candidate substance screening assay hereof is the ability to prepare a protease composition in a relative purified form, for example, in a manner as discussed herein. This is an important aspect of the candidate substance screening assay in that without at least a relatively purified preparation, one will not be able to assay specifically for protease inhibition, as opposed to the effects of the inhibition upon other substances in the extract which then might affect the protease. In any event, the successful isolation of the protease now allows for the first time the ability to identify new compounds which can be used for inhibiting this herpes related protein.

The candidate screening assay is quite simple to set up and perform, and is related in many ways to the assay discussed above for determining protease activity. This, after obtaining a relatively purified preparation of the protease, one will desire to simply admix a candidate substance with the protease preparation, preferably under conditions which would allow the protease to perform its cleavage function but for inclusion of a inhibitory substance. Thus, for example, one will typically desire to include within the admixture an amount of a known protease substrate such as the amino acid sequence coded by the U_L26.5 coding sequence or at least the cleavage site at which the protease cleaves ICP35 c, d into e and f. In this

fashion, one can measure the ability of the candidate substance to reduce or alter cleavage of the herpes protease substrate relatively in the presence of the candidate substance.

Accordingly, one will desire to measure or otherwise determine the activity of the relatively purified protease in the absence of the assayed candidate substance relative to the activity in the presence of the candidate substance in order to assess the relative inhibitory capability of the candidate substance.

In still further embodiments, the present invention is concerned with a method of inhibiting a protease which includes subjecting the protease to an effective concentration of a protease inhibitor such as one of the family of peptidyl compounds discussed above, or with a candidate substance identified in accordance with the candidate screening assay embodiments. This is, of course, an important aspect of the invention in that it is believed that by inhibiting the herpes protease, one will be enabled to treat various aspects of herpes infections. It is believed that the use of such inhibitors to block the action of the protease to produce capsid proteins will serve to treat or palliate the infection, and may be useful by themselves or in conjunction with other herpes therapies.

1. Markers (Tracers)

Two monoclonal antibodies were used as markers (tracers), one to a stationary epitope encoded by both U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and one reactive with a "movable epitope." The latter was an indispensable tool in the identification of the products of the two open reading frames, in the determination of the function of the proteins, and in mapping of the cleavage site. Without the "movable epitope," analysis would depend solely on radioactive tracers or monoclonal antibodies to oligopeptides corresponding to various domains of the genes. The movable epitope offers instant antibody to the product of any open reading frame and, when used in the context of the present invention, it enormously facilitated identification of the function of the product of the gene into which it has been inserted.

By inserting the coding sequence of an epitope reactive with a cytomegalovirus monoclonal antibody and homologs of the IgG binding domain of staphylococcus protein A into the 3' termini of the coding domains of the two open reading frames, the products of the protease cleavage were identified, the cleaved protease, designated *Prb*, and ICP e and f. It was also determined by this methodology that the cleavage site for the ICP35 proteins and that separating the total protease sequence into *Pra* and *Prb*, is approximately 20 amino acids from the carboxyl termini of both the protease and the ICP precursor.

As an example of the investigation of the herpes genome using plasmids with markers, the effect of one of the marker-inserted plasmids, S (FIG. 1), used to transfect cells with a portion of the herpes genome is illustrative. In this plasmid the CMV epitope was inserted at the carboxyl terminus of the sequence of ICP35. The cells infected with a portion of the herpes genome in this fashion were then collected and disrupted so that proteins within the cells could be analyzed. These proteins were then electrophoretically separated by molecular weight into bands. ICP35 is immunologically identifiable by the HSV antibody. The CMV epitope was sought among the bands by applying the antibody to the epitope and detecting a signal indicating the production of an antigen-antibody complex. Results of this immunological analysis showed that the CMV epitope was detected in bands c and d, but not in e and f. This indicated that cleavage of the carboxyl terminus of c and d had taken place to form e and f.

2. Cell Free Protein Synthesis

Another useful technique was a cell free protein synthesizing system. RNA's corresponding to the mRNA'S of U_L26 and U_L26.5 were transcribed by Sp6 RNA polymerase and translated in nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysates, a cell-free, "ribosome machine." The proteins translated in cell free systems *in vitro* were labelled with radioactive labels, separated by gel electrophoresis, and subjected to autoradiography to locate the band containing labels. There were two sets of experiments using this general methodology:

- (i) Incubation of the translation products of the U plasmid in the presence of cycloheximide which resulted in gradual accumulation of the cleavage product (*Prb*) of the U_L26 protein. The amount of accumulated cleavage product was proportional to the duration of the incubation (FIG. 12, lanes 12-15).
- (ii) Identical results were obtained with the translation products of plasmid V (lanes 4-7). The significance of this experiment stems from the presence of the CMV epitope at the carboxyl terminus of U_L26. As expected, the translation product *Pra* of U_L26 made from plasmid V migrated more slowly than the authentic protein derived from plasmid U. However, the processed form *Prb* of U_L26 synthesized from plasmid V comigrated with that of the authentic protein from plasmid U, indicating that the U_L26 autoprocessing involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage.

3. HSV-1(F), a Temperature Sensitive Mutant

Another tool used in the analysis of the HSV genome was HSV-1(F), a temperature sensitive mutant which at 39° C does not express its own U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frame. Rather, HSV-1(F) at the non-permissive temperature induces α -gene promoters (Post et al., 1981) and expresses primarily the α type genes.

4. Identification and Use of Protease Inhibition

If the action of the protease is inhibited, the capsid cannot be produced and the virus will not be replicated. This inhibition may be either at the level of transcription, translation, or protein action. Interference with transcription would necessitate interference with mRNA formation on a DNA template. Interference with translation would necessitate interfering with the synthesis of proteins on the mRNA template. Alternatively, the action of the protease may itself be disrupted either by destroying the structure of the protease, in particular its proteolytic module, altering the cleavage site of its substrate, or binding the protease to irreversible inhibitors.

Specifically designed peptides which block the function of the protease are extremely valuable in preventing and treating herpes infections. Embodiments of these blockers include any substrate analogues or serine protease inhibitor, e.g., oligopeptides or their derivatives which contain the amino acid sequence of the cleavage site recognized by the protease. Methods for identifying suitable protease inhibitors from candidate substances are disclosed in Example 17.

It is an additional object of the present invention to provide a ready means for producing the viral protease for use in detecting inhibitors, to develop treatment modalities, to develop antibodies for detection of viral infection, and to develop inactive mutants of the protease.

An exemplary embodiment for preparing the protease protein is to prepare a nucleic acid segment which includes a nucleic acid sequence capable of encoding the desired protease protein or polypeptide. This segment may be that which encodes the entire protease or only some portion of it, for example, the proteolytic domain of the protease. The segment may be as small as that capable of triggering a positive signal with an antibody, thereby, identifying the presence of a viral infection. Segments functionally equivalent to those shown in FIG. 1, which were developed in the present invention, may also be selected depending on the desired polypeptide to be produced. Functional equivalence may be determined by testing whether the segment can cleave either the ICP35 precursor or the *Pr* protease, for example, using techniques disclosed herein to detect protease inhibitors from among candidate substances.

The nucleic acid segment selected is transferred into an environment appropriate for expression of the segment as a polypeptide. This environment may be a vessel containing a mixture capable of inducing expression, e.g., a rabbit reticulocyte lysate. Alternatively, the segment may be transferred to a host cell by transformation, transfection via a recombinant expression vector, electroporation, or a "gene gun." The host cell may be selected from BHK cells, Vero, Hela, E. coli, and the like.

The recombinant expression vector may include a promoter. Embodiments of promoters are the α 4 promoter, the native promoter of U_L26.5, and any other prokaryotic or eukaryotic promoters.

In another embodiment, the nucleic acid segment may be prepared by obtaining genomic nucleic acids from herpes cells, amplifying a proteolytic site-conserved nucleic acid sequence region within the genomic nucleic acids, preparing recombinant clones which include said amplifying nucleic acid sequences, and selecting clones which comprise the desired amplified nucleic acid sequence.

The viral protease may also be prepared by obtaining a sample which contains the protease, homogenizing the sample, and fractionating the homogenate to obtain a protease fraction. Samples which contain the protease will include biological samples, for instance, virally infected tissues.

5. Treatment of Herpes Infections

Treatment modalities contemplated include topical and systemic medicants. For dermal and epidermal lesions, creams, ointments or sprays containing a protease inhibitor, are contemplated. Alternatively, systemic treatment by intravenous injection or ingestion is envisioned to prevent the deleterious outbreak of viral replication due to reactivation of latent viral inhabitants of host cells.

6. Virus and Cells

The properties of HSV-1(F) and HSV-2(G), the prototype HSV-1 and HSV-2 strains, respectively, used in

this invention, and the maintenance and propagation of the thymidine kinase minus baby hamster kidney (BHK) cells have been described previously and are incorporated herein by reference (Arsenakis et al., 1986; Ejercito et al., 1968; Roizman and Spear, 1968).

5 **7. Monoclonal Antibodies**

Monoclonal antibody H725 and CH28-2 to ICP35 and CMV glycoprotein B, respectively, have been described previously (Braun et al., 1983, 1984; see also Zweig, 1980, Liu and Roizman, 1991). The monoclonal antibody H725 reacts with ICP35 of HSV-1 but not with HSV-2 proteins (Braun et al., 1983, 1984). CH28-2 was obtained from L. Pereira (Liu and Roizman, 1991a; Braun et al., 1984). As a substitute, any commercial antibodies for any known epitope may be used. CH28-2 is a monoclonal antibody directed against human cytomegalovirus (CMV) glycoprotein B. The epitope of this antibody has been mapped to a 20-amino-acid peptide, N-KGQKP~~N~~LDRLRHRKNGYRH-C, by assaying the reactivity of a series of overlapping peptides synthesized according to the predicted nucleotide sequence of the protein.

15

8. *In Vitro* Transcription and Translation

5 µg of Plasmid DNA templates linearized with *EcoRI* or *HindIII* were prepared and transcribed in the presence of cap analog GppG (New England Biolabs, MA) with Sp6 or T7 RNA polymerase as recommended by Promega Biotec, Madison, WI. One µg amounts of the RNAs were translated for ten minutes in 50 µl reaction mixtures containing nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate (Promega Biotec, WI) and [³⁵S]-methionine (Dupont, NEN Research Product), and the translation was then terminated either by the addition of a disruption buffer (0.05M Tris pH 7.0, 8.5% vol/vol sucrose, 5% vol/vol β-mercaptoethanol, and 2% vol/vol sodium dodecyl sulfate) or by 20 fold dilution in phosphate-buffered saline containing cycloheximide (100 µg/ml final concentration) and various concentrations of protease inhibitors. After 6 hrs of reaction in the presence of cycloheximide the mixtures were denatured in disruption buffer, subjected to electrophoresis in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets as described herein (see also Liu and Roizman, 1991 and Braun, 1984) and exposed to Kodak X-Omat films.

30 **9. Transfections and Superinfection of Cells Transfected With Plasmid DNAs**

Transfections were done as described by Kristie and Roizman (1984) except that wells were generally transfected with 10 µg of plasmid DNA. 6-well Costar (Cambridge, Mass.) dish cultures of BHK cells contained approximately 10⁶ cells per well. In most experiments, the transfected cells were exposed 18 to 20 hours post transfection to 10 pfu of HSV-1(F) or HSV-2(G) per cell as stated in the Results. After 2 hours of exposure of cells to virus at 10 °C, the inoculum was replaced with Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum and the cells were incubated at 34 °C, 37 °C, or 39 °C for 20 hours. In the experiments which did not involve viral infection, the cells were harvested 40-42 hours post transfection. At 20 hr. postinfection, cells were labelled for 2 hr with 50 µCi of ³⁵S methionine in 1 ml of medium (199 without methionine supplemented with 1% calf serum). The harvested cells were washed once with phosphate-buffered saline, pelleted by centrifugation at about 4,000 rpm for 5 min in a SS34 Sorvall rotor spun in a DuPont centrifuge, suspended in the disruption buffer, sonicated for 20 seconds in ice, and boiled for 1 minute before electrophoretic separation in denaturing gels (see also Liu and Roizman, 1991a and b; Ejercito et al., 1968).

45

10. Electrophoretic Separation and Staining of Infected Cell Proteins With Monoclonal Antibody

The denatured, solubilized polypeptides from cell lysates or *in vitro* translation were separated on 9.5% or 12% (vol/vol) SDS-polyacrylamide gels crosslinked with N,N'-diallyltartardiamide as described by Gibson and Roizman (1972, 1974), and Braun et al. (1984). The separated polypeptides from BHK cells were transferred electrically to nitrocellulose membranes and reacted in an enzyme-linked immunoassay with only anti-mouse IgG conjugated with horseradish peroxidase (Amersham, Arlington Heights, IL) or with this anti-mouse IgG in addition to the monoclonal antibodies H725 against HSV-1, ICP35 or CH28-2 against CMV epitope, as previously described (Braun et al., 1984). The gels containing the separated polypeptides translated from the reticulocyte lysate were dried and exposed to Kodak X-Omat film.

55

11. Isolation and S1 Analysis of Cytoplasmic RNA

Cytoplasmic RNA was purified as described previously by Jenkins and Howett (1984) from Vero cells mock infected or infected with 20 PFU of HSV-1(F) per cell and maintained for 12 h. HSV-1 DNA probe (0.02 pmol) was 5' end labeled with [γ - 32 P]ATP (Dupont, NEN Research Products), hybridized to 50 μ g of total cytoplasmic RNA, digested with S1 nuclease, and separated on 7% polyacrylamide gels in the presence of 8 M urea (Jenkins and Howett, 1984).

12. Methods of Preparing the Proteins of the Present Invention

Recombinant vectors are useful both as a means for preparing quantities of the protease or ICP35 encoding DNA itself, or as a means for preparing the encoded proteins. It is contemplated that where proteins of the invention are made from recombinant means, one may employ either prokaryotic or eukaryotic expression systems.

Where expression of herpes nucleic acid segments in a eukaryotic host is contemplated, it may be desirable to employ a vector, such as a plasmid, that incorporates a eukaryotic origin of replication, as exemplified by vectors of the pCMV series, like pCMV4. Additionally, for the purposes of expression in eukaryotic systems, one will desire to position the protease or ICP35 encoding sequence adjacent to and under control of an effective eukaryotic promoter, such as an SV40 or CMV promoter. To bring a coding sequence under the control of a promoter, whether it be a eukaryotic or prokaryotic promoter, all that is generally needed is to position the 5' end of the transcription initiation site of the transcriptional reading frame of the protein between about 1 and about 50 nucleotides downstream of the promoter chosen.

Furthermore, where eukaryotic expression is contemplated, one will desire to incorporate into the transcriptional unit which includes the desired peptide or protein, an appropriate polyadenylation site (e.g. 5'-AATAAA-3'). Typically, the poly A site is placed about 30 to 2000 nucleotides "downstream" of the termination site of the protein at a position prior to transcription termination.

Useful eukaryotic vectors which include all of the foregoing, and into which the herpes genes of the present invention can be inserted with little difficulty are well known. For example, suitable vectors include pCD and pCMV, with the most preferred system being pCMV. In addition to pCD and pCMV vectors, other preferred eukaryotic expression vectors include pMSG and pSVL from Pharmacia LKB Technology, Piscataway, N.J. These utilize the MMTV and SV40 late promoters, respectively. A cDNA incorporating the entire reading frames of the herpes protein, such as shown in FIG. 1, can be readily inserted into one of the foregoing vectors via the HindIII restriction site (AAGCTT) "upstream" of (i.e. 5' of) the initiation codon (ATG) that begins translation of the encoded ICP35 precursor.

It is contemplated that virtually any of the commonly employed eukaryotic host cells can be used in connection with herpes gene expression in accordance herewith. Examples include lines typically employed for eukaryotic expression such as AtT-20, HepG2, VERO, HeLa, CHO, WI 38, BHK, COS-7 RIN and MDCK cell lines. A preferred line for use in eukaryotic expression embodiments of the present invention is the BHK system.

Prokaryotic expression is an alternative which can be employed where desired. Although not required, where prokaryotic expression is envisioned, one will generally desire to employ a transcriptional unit which incorporates a reading frame corresponding only to the desired peptide itself, represented by embodiments in FIG. 1, so that further processing will not be required. Typically, prokaryotic promoters which may be employed include P_L , T7 and lac promoter, with T7 being generally preferred. Other preferred bacterial expression vectors include plasmid PKK233-2 and PKK233-3, available from Pharmacia LKB Technology. These utilize the *tac* and *trc* promoters, respectively.

Of course, even where a eukaryotic hook-up and expression is used, one will nevertheless desire to include a prokaryotic origin of expression, as well as selective markers operable in prokaryotic systems, to allow "shuttling" of sequences from construction in prokaryotic to expression in eukaryotes.

In certain embodiments, one may desire to simply prepare herpes proteins or peptides in accordance with the present invention by non-recombinant synthetic means, such as by chemical synthesis of peptides or cell-free ribosomal "machine".. Suitable peptide synthesizers are commercially available (Applied Biosystems), and may be employed.

In certain embodiments of the invention it is contemplated that DNA fragments both shorter and longer which incorporate sequences from FIG. 1 will find additional utilities, including uses in the preparation of short active peptides or even as short DNA fragment hybridization probes, e.g., in screening clone banks. In any event, fragments corresponding to the FIG. 1 sequence for stretches of as short as 14-20 or so nucleotides, will find utility in accordance with these or other embodiments. By having stretches of at least about 14 nucleotides in common with the nucleic acid segments of FIG. 1, or their complements, a DNA segment will have the ability to form a preferential hybrid with herpes species DNA, particularly under more

stringent conditions such as 0.15M NaCl and 0.02M sodium citrate pH 7.4 at 50 ° C.

While a complementary or common stretch of about 14 or so nucleotides will ensure the ability to form a stable hybrid, longer stretches of complementarity may prove more desirable for certain uses. Thus, one may desire for certain uses DNA segments incorporating longer stretches of complementarity, for example,
 5 on the order of 18, 22 or even 25 or so bases.

13. Antibodies Against the Proteins of the Present Invention

In other embodiments, the invention concerns the preparation of antibodies to the herpes protease and
 10 species derived therefrom, either recombinant or non-recombinantly prepared. For example, it is contemplated that antibodies prepared against the herpes protease of FIG. 1, or other non-human species such as bovine or porcine, will have certain advantages over antibodies prepared against the human species, particularly in embodiments where an immuno-binding of reduced strength is desired.

Compositions which include monoclonal antibodies of the present invention may be prepared by first
 15 fusing spleen cells of a rodent with myeloma cells from the same rodent species, wherein the rodent providing the spleen cells has been immunized with the herpes peptide, precursor, or related peptides. The rodent species utilized will generally be a mouse, particularly where one seeks to make an antibody against the herpes protease of FIG. 1. Of course, where a protease is prepared which incorporates structural variations over the one will likely be able to successfully employ a hybridoma system according to the
 20 species of interest.

In addition, the present invention provides a method for isolating proteases from other species which may be found antigenically cross-reactive with that of HSV-1. This method includes preparing an immuno-
 25 adsorbent material having attached thereto an antibody to the protease. Numerous immuno-adsorbent materials are known to those skilled in the art and include, for example, Affi-Gel, Cn-Sephrose, protein A= Sepharose, and numerous other well known immuno-adsorbent techniques. All such techniques are applicable to the present invention and should prove useful in the isolation of the immuno cross-reactive species (for a more complete listing, see Monoclonal Hybridoma Antibodies: Techniques and Applications, John G. Hurrell, ed., CRC Press, 1982, incorporated herein by reference).

Moreover, kits may be provided in accordance with the present invention to allow for a clinical detection
 30 of the herpes protease, and related proteases, in a biologic sample. Such kits would include polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies having specificity for the protease or immunologically related protease, in combination with an immunodetection reagent. An immunodetection reagent is defined as any reagent for detecting or quantifying the formation of antibody/antigen complexes. Typical immunodetection reagents include the use of radiolabeled or enzyme-labeled antigens or antibodies. Techniques which incorporate labeled
 35 antibodies include, for example, RIA (radioimmunoassay) and ELISA (enzyme-linked immuno assay). However, numerous other techniques are known which may be employed in immunodetection kits in accordance with the present invention. Patents which teach suitable techniques include, for example, U.S. Patents 4,446,232; 4,407,943; 4,399,299; and 454,233.

Thus, a typical herpes protease detection kit based on the ELISA technique could include the anti-
 40 herpes protease monoclonal antibody or purified protease antigen (where one seeks to detect circulating antibodies), and a second "immunodetection" antibody capable of specifically immunoreacting with the purified antigen or anti-protease antibody. The second antibody could have a color-generating enzymatic activity associated with it, for example, an attached peroxidase molecule. When a second "immunodetection" antibody is employed in this fashion, one will generally first form an immunocomplex
 45 between the biologic sample to be tested, for example, serum, plasma, urine or tissue samples, and the antibody. After forming such an immunocomplex, the immunodetection antibody is added to react quantitatively with protease-bound antibody. This complex formation is then quantitated through the calorimetric peroxidase assay.

An alternative to using the above double-antibody technique, one may incorporate the enzyme or radio-
 50 ligand directly on the anti-protease antibody, and quantification made directly with the use of this directly labeled antibody.

The foregoing type of kit and method is well known and can be viewed generally as including the steps of obtaining a biologic sample from a patient, contacting the biologic sample with anti-herpes protease monoclonal antibody under conditions which will promote the formation of antibody/antigen complexes and
 55 detecting the formation of a specific immunologic reaction between the monoclonal antibody and the sample.

Neutralizing antibodies are also contemplated which, when bound to the protease or a segment thereof, render the proteolytic capability of the protease non-functional.

14. Host Cell Cultures and Vectors

In general, prokaryotes are preferred for the initial cloning of DNA sequences and constructing the vectors useful in the invention. For example, *E. coli* K12 strain 294 (ATCC No. 314460) is particularly useful. Other microbial strains which may be used include *E. coli* strains such as *E. coli* B, and *E. coli* X 1776 (ATCC No. 31537). These examples are, intended to be illustrative rather than limiting.

Prokaryotes may also be used for expression. The aforementioned strains, as well as *E. coli* W3110 (F-, lambda-, prototrophic, ATCC No. 27325), bacilli such as *Bacillus subtilis*, or other enterobacteriaceae such as *Salmonella typhimurium* or *Serratia marcesans*, and various *Pseudomonas* species may be used.

In general, plasmid vectors containing replicon and control sequences which are derived from species compatible with the host cell are used in connection with these hosts. The vector ordinarily carries a replication site, as well as marking sequences which are capable of providing phenotypic selection in transformed cells. For example, *E. coli* is typically transformed using PBR322, a plasmid derived from an *E. coli* species. pBR 322 contains genes for ampicillin and tetracycline resistance and thus provides easy means for identifying transformed cells. The PBR plasmid, or other microbial plasmid or phage must also contain, or be modified to contain, promoters which can be used by the microbial organism for expression of its own proteins.

The promoters most commonly used in recombinant DNA construction include the B-lactamase (penicillinase) and lactose promoter systems and a tryptophan (*trp*) promoter system. While these are the most commonly used, other microbial promoters have been discovered and utilized, and details concerning their nucleotide sequences have been published, enabling a skilled worker to ligate them functionally with plasmid vectors.

In addition to prokaryotes, eukaryotic microbes, such as yeast cultures may also be used. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, or common baker's yeast is the most commonly used among eukaryotic microorganisms, although a number of other strains are commonly available. For expression in *Saccharomyces*, the plasmid Yrp7, for example, is commonly used. This plasmid already contains the *trp1* gene which provides a selection marker for a mutant strain of yeast lacking the ability to grow in tryptophan, for example ATCC No. 44076 or PEP4-1. The presence of the *trp1* lesion as a characteristic of the yeast host cell genome then provides an effective environment for detecting transformation by growth in the absence of tryptophan.

Suitable promoting sequences in yeast vectors include the promoters for 3-phosphoglycerate kinase or other glycolytic enzymes, such as enolase, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, hexokinase, pyruvate decarboxylase, phosphofructokinase, glucose-6-phosphate isomerase, 3-phosphoglycerate mutase, pyruvate kinase, triosephosphate isomerase, phosphoglucose isomerase, and glucokinase. In constructing suitable expression plasmids, the termination sequences associated with these genes are also ligated into the expression vector 3' of the sequence desired to be expressed to provide polyadenylation of the mRNA termination. Other promoters, which have the additional advantage of transcription controlled by growth conditions are the promoter region for alcohol dehydrogenase 2, isocytochrome C, acid phosphatase, degradative enzymes associated with nitrogen metabolism, and the aforementioned glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, and enzymes responsible for maltose and galactose utilization. Any plasmid vector containing a yeast-compatible promoter, origin of replication and termination sequences is suitable.

In addition to microorganisms, cultures of cells derived from multicellular organisms may also be used as hosts. In principle, any such cell culture is workable, whether from vertebrate or invertebrate culture. However, interest has been greatest in vertebrate cells, and propagation of vertebrate cells in culture (tissue culture) has become a routine procedure in recent years. Examples of such useful host cell lines are AtT-20 VERO and HeLa cells, Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell lines, and W138, BHK, COS-7 293 and MDCK cell lines. Expression vectors for such cells ordinarily include (if necessary) an origin of replication, a promoter located in front of the gene to be expressed, along with any necessary ribosome binding sites, RNA splice sites, polyadenylation site, and transcriptional terminator sequences.

For use in mammalian cells, the control functions on the expression vectors are often provided by viral material. For example, commonly used promoters are derived from polyoma, Adenovirus 2, Cytomegalovirus and most frequently Simian Virus 40 (SV40). The early and late promoters of SV40 virus are particularly useful because both are obtained easily from the virus as a fragment which also contains the SV40 viral origin of replication. Smaller or larger SV40 fragments may also be used, provided there is included the approximately 250 bp sequence extending from the Hind III site toward the Bgl I site located in the viral origin of replication. Further, it is also possible, and often desirable, to utilize promoter or control sequences normally associated with the desired gene sequence, provided such control sequences are compatible with the host cell systems.

An origin of replication may be provided either by construction of the vector to include an exogenous origin, such as may be derived from SV40 or other viral (e.g., Polyoma, Adeno, HSV, BPV, CMV source, or may be provided by the host cell chromosomal replication mechanism. If the vector is integrated into the host cell chromosome, the latter is often sufficient.

5

15. Nucleic Acid Hybridization to Detect the Sequences Capable of Coding for the Serine Proteases, the ICP35 Proteins or their Biologically Functional Equivalents.

The nucleic acid sequence information provided by the invention allows for the preparation of relatively short DNA (or RNA) sequences having the ability to specifically hybridize to gene sequences capable of coding for at least the proteolytic domain of the proteases or the cleavage site of the ICP35 proteins. In these aspects, nucleic acid probes of an appropriate length are prepared based on a consideration of the sequence shown in FIG. 1. The ability of such nucleic acid probes to specifically hybridize to the proteases or ICP35 gene sequences lend them particular utility in a variety of embodiments. Most importantly, the probes can be used in a variety of assays for detecting the presence of complementary sequences in a given sample. Other uses are envisioned, including the use of the sequence information for the preparation of mutant species primers, or primers for use in preparing other genetic constructions.

To provide certain of the advantages in accordance with the invention, the preferred nucleic acid sequence employed for hybridization studies or assays includes sequences that are complementary to at least a 14 base nucleotide stretches of the sequence shown in FIG. 1. A size of at least 14 nucleotides in length helps to ensure that the fragment will be of sufficient length to form a duplex molecule that is both stable and selective. Such fragments may be readily prepared by, for example, directly synthesizing the fragment by chemical means, by application of nucleic acid reproduction technology, such as the PCR technology of U.S. Patent 4,603,102, or by introducing selected sequences into recombinant vectors for recombinant production. Segments of from 18 to 25, or even 30 to 40 bases, all the way up to sizes large enough to encode a complete gene or genes, are also within the scope of this invention.

Accordingly, the nucleotide sequences of the invention are important for their ability to selectively form duplex molecules with complementary stretches of the gene. Depending on the application envisioned, varying conditions of hybridization may be employed to achieve varying degree of selectivity of the probe toward the target sequence. For applications requiring a high degree of selectivity, relatively stringent conditions may be employed to form the hybrids, for example, selecting relatively low salt and/or high temperature conditions, such as provided by 0.02M-0.15M NaCl at temperatures of 50°C to 70°C. These conditions are particularly selective, and tolerate little, if any, mismatch between the probe and the template or target strand.

Of course, for some applications, for example, preparation of mutants employing a mutant primer strand hybridized to an underlying template, or to isolate protease or ICP35 coding sequences from related species, functional equivalents, or the like, less stringent hybridization conditions are called for in order to allow formation of the heteroduplex. In these circumstances, conditions employed would be, e.g., such as 0.15M-0.9M salt, at temperatures ranging from 20°C to 55°C. Cross-hybridizing species can thereby be readily identified as positively hybridizing signals with respect to control hybridizations. In any case, it is generally appreciated that conditions can be rendered more stringent by the addition of increasing amounts of formamide, which serves to destabilize the hybrid duplex in the same manner as increased temperature. Thus, hybridization conditions can be readily manipulated, and thus will generally be a method of choice depending on the desired results.

In certain embodiments, it will be advantageous to employ nucleic acid sequences of the present invention in combination with an appropriate means, such as a label, for determining hybridization. A wide variety of appropriate indicator means are known in the art, including radioactive, enzymatic or other ligands, such as avidin/biotin, which are capable of giving a detectable signal. In preferred diagnostic embodiments, an enzyme tag such as urease, alkaline phosphatase or peroxidase, may be employed instead of radioactive or other environmental undesirable reagents. In the case of enzyme tags, calorimetric indicator substrates are known which can be employed to provide a means visible to the human eye or spectrophotometrically, to identify specific hybridization with complementary nucleic acid-containing samples.

In general, it is envisioned that the hybridization probes described herein will be useful both as reagents in solution hybridization as well as in embodiments employing a solid phase. In embodiments involving a solid phase, the test DNA (or RNA) is adsorbed or otherwise affixed to a selected matrix or surface. This fixed, single-stranded nucleic acid is then subjected to specific hybridization with selected probes under desired conditions. The selected conditions will depend on the particular circumstances based on the

particular criteria required (depending, for example, on the G + C contents, type of target nucleic acid, source of nucleic acid, size of hybridization probe, etc.). Following washing of the hybridized surface so as to remove nonspecifically bound probe molecules, specific hybridization is detected, or even quantified, by means of the label.

One method of making molecules for detection of cell extracts is to use fluorescent probes. Fluorescent probes are well known to those skilled in the art. An example of a method is to bind fluorescein-labeled avidin (Vector Laboratories, Burlingame, Ca) to a biotin-labeled protein. The signal may be enhanced.

The present invention has been described in terms of particular embodiments found or proposed by the present inventors to comprise preferred modes for the practice of the present invention. It will be appreciated by those of skill in the art that numerous modifications and changes can be made in the particular embodiments exemplified without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. For example, due to codon redundancy, changes can be made in the underlying DNA sequence without affecting the protein sequence. Moreover, due to biological functional equivalency considerations, changes can be made in protein structure and still achieve a useful protease or antigenic subfragment. All such modifications are intended to be included within the scope of the appended claims.

The features disclosed in the foregoing description, in the claims and/or in the accompanying drawings may, both separately and in any combination thereof, be material for realising the invention in diverse forms thereof.

REFERENCES

The references listed below are incorporated herein by reference to the extent that they supplement, explain, provide a background for, or teach methodology, techniques, and/or compositions employed herein.

Arsenakis, M., Hubenthal-Voss, J., Campadelli-Fiume, G., Pereira, L., and Roizman, B. (1986), Construction and properties of a cell line constitutively expressing the herpes simplex virus glycoprotein B dependent on functional $\alpha 4$ protein synthesis. *J. Virol.* 60:674-682.

Batterson, W. and Roizman, B. (1983), Characterization of the herpes simplex virion-associated factor responsible for the induction of α genes. *J. Virol.*, 46:371-377.

Braun, D.K., Pereira, L., Norrild, B., and Roizman, B. (1983), Application of denatured, electrophoretically separated, and immobilized lysates of herpes simplex virus-infected cells for the detection of monoclonal antibodies and for studies of the properties of viral proteins. *J. Virol.*, 46:103-112.

Braun, D.K., Roizman, B., and Pereira, L. (1984), Characterization of post-translational products of herpes simplex virus gene 35 proteins binding to the surfaces of full capsids but not empty capsids. *J. Virol.*, 49:142-153.

Chee, M.S., Bankier, A.T., Beck, S. et al. (1990), *Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology*, 154:127-169.

Corey, L. and Spear (1986), PG Infections with herpes simplex viruses. *N. Eng. J. Med.*, 314:686-691.

Davison, A.J. and McGeoch, D.J. (1986), Evolutionary comparisons of the S segments in the genomes of herpes simplex virus type 1 and varicellazoster virus. *J. Gen. Virol.*, 67:597-611.

Davison, A.J. and McGeoch, D.J. (1986), *J. Gen. Virol.*, 67:1759-1816.

Ejercito, P.M., Kieff, E.D., and Roizman, B. (1986), Characterization of herpes simplex virus strains differing in their effect on social behavior of infected cells. *J. Gen. Virol.*, 2:357-364.

Gibson, W., Marcy, A.I., Comolli, J.C., and Lee, J. (1990), Identification of precursor to cytomegalovirus capsid assembly protein and evidence that processing results in loss of its carboxyl-terminal end. *J. Virol.*, 64:1241-1249.

Gibson, W., and Roizman, B. (1972), Proteins specified by herpes simplex virus VIII. Characterization and composition of multiple capsid forms of subtypes 1 and 2. *J. Virol.*, 10:1044-1052.

Gibson, W., and Roizman, B. (1974), Protein specified by herpes simplex virus. Staining and radiolabeling properties of B capsids and virion proteins in polyacrylamide gels. *J. Virol.*, 13:155-165.

Jenkins et al. (1984), Characterization of the mRNAs mapping in the Bp111 N fragment of the herpes simplex virus type 2 genome. *J. Virol.*, 52:99-107.

Kraut, J. (1977), *Annual Rev. Biochem.*, 46:331-358.

Kristie, T.M., and Roizman, B. (1984), Separation of sequences defining basal expressing from those conferring α gene recognition within the regulatory domains of herpes simplex virus 1 α genes. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:4065-4069.

Kyte, J., et al. (1982), *J. Mol. Biol.*, 157:105-132.

Liu, F., and Roizman, B. (1991a), The promoter, transcriptional unit, and coding sequence of herpes simplex family 35 proteins are contained within and in frame with the U_L26 open reading frame. *J. Virol.*,

65:206-212.

Liu, F., and Roizman, B. (1991b), *J. Virol.*, 65:5149-5156.

McGeoch, D.J., Dalrymple, M.A., Davison, A.J., Dolan, A., Frame, M.C., McNab, D., Perry, L.J., Scott, J.E., and Taylor, P. (1988), The complete DNA sequence of the long unique region in the genome of herpes simplex virus type 1. *J. Gen. Virol.*, 69:1531-1574.

Morse, L. S., Pereira, L., Roizman, B. et al. (1978), Preparation of herpes simplex virus of high titer. *J. Virol.*, 2:83-84.

Neurath, H. (1983), *Science.*, 224:350-357.

Newcomb, W.W., and Brown, J.C. (1991), Structure of the herpes simplex virus capsid effects of extraction with guanidine hydrochloride and partial reconstitution of extracted capsids. *J. Virol.*, 65:613-620.

Newcomb, W.W., Brown, J.C., Booy, F.P., and Steven, A.C. (1989), Nucleocapsid mass and capsomere protein stoichiometry in equine herpes virus 1: scanning transmission electron microscopic study. *J. Virol.*, 63:3777-3783.

Post, L.E., Mackem, S. and Roizman, B. (1981), The regulation of α genes of herpes simplex virus: expression of chimeric genes produced by fusion of thymidine kinase with α gene promoters. *Cell*, 24:555-565.

Preston, V.G., Coates, J.A.V., and Rixon, F.J. (1983), Identification and characterization of a herpes simplex virus gene product required for encapsodation of virus DNA. *J. Virol.*, 45:1056-1064.

Preston, V.G. (1992), Processing of the herpes simplex virus assembly protein ICP35 near its carboxy terminal end requires the product of the whole of the UL26 reading frame, *Virology*, 186:87-98.

Robson, L. and Gibson, W. (1989), Primate cytomegalovirus assembly protein: genome localization and nucleotide sequence. *J. Virol.*, 63:669-676.

Roizman, B., and Spear, P.Z.G. (1968), Preparation of herpes simplex virus of high titer. *J. Virol.*, 65:1525-1529.

Sambrook, J., Fritsch, E.F. and Maniatis, T. (1989), Molecular cloning, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratories.

Schenk, P. et al. (1991), The 45-kilodalton protein of cytomegalovirus (Colburn) B-capsids is an amino-terminal extension form of the assembly protein. *J. Virol.*, 65:1525-1529.

Skalka, A.M. (1989), Retroviral Proteases: First glimpses at the anatomy of a processing machine. *Cell*, 58:911-913.

Welch, A.R. et al. (1991), A herpes virus maturational proteinase, assemblin: identification of the gene, putative active site domain, and cleavage site. *PNAS*, 88:10792-10796.

Claims

1. A herpes protease.

2. The herpes protease of claim 1 further defined as a serine protease.

3. The herpes protease of claim 1 comprising an apparent molecular weight of approximately 75kd to 85kd as determined by SDS-PAGE gel electrophoresis.

4. The herpes protease of claim 3 further defined as migrating as essentially a single band after preparation in a reticulocyte lysate ribosome system, followed by SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and ^{35}S labeling, said band corresponding to an apparent molecular weight of approximately 75-85kd.

5. The herpes protease of claim 4 further identified as comprising an amino acid sequence of approximately greater than 306-635 amino acids, and a protease cleavage site located about 18-25 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus.

6. The herpes protease of claim 1 further defined as comprising four domains, said domains designated respectively I, II, III and IV, and said domains defined by amino acid sequences included within an amino acid sequence characterizing the protease.

7. An amino acid sequence comprising the domains designated II and III of the herpes protease of claim 6.

8. The herpes protease of claim 7 wherein the domains designated II and III are further defined as

comprising an amino acid sequence extending from approximately position 10 to approximately position 306, said positions defined according to the amino acid sequence of the intact protease.

9. A protein or peptide comprising a proteolytic domain of a herpes protease, said domain including:
 - (a) a domain of the herpes protease designated II or III, said domain or domains defined by an amino acid sequence extending from approximately position 10 to position 306; and
 - (b) histidine residues at positions 61 and 148.
10. A nucleic acid segment capable of coding for the protease of any one of claims 1 through 9.
11. The nucleic acid segment of claim 10 further identified as including a sequence encoding a domain for the family of herpes simplex virus 1 capsid proteins designated ICP35.
12. The nucleic acid segment of claim 11 wherein the gene coding domain further comprises a segment between locations designated +832 and +2761, said locations as distanced from the transcription initiation site of the U_L26 open reading frame in the herpes genome position designated as +1, said gene coding domain also comprising sequences downstream from the *Kpn*I site (+2104) to a poly (A) site at position +2138.
13. The nucleic acid segment of claim 12 further defined as comprising an overlapping and 3' coterminal first and a second open reading frame, said segment coding for a first and a second protein respectively, wherein the first protein has an apparent molecular weight of approximately 75-85kd and the second protein has an apparent molecular weight of approximately 40kd-55kd, both molecular weights as determined by SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, and wherein the first protein comprises at least a proteolytic module capable of cleaving the first or the second protein.
14. The nucleic acid segment of claim 13 wherein the length of the coding region for the second protein is approximately 990 base pairs.
15. The nucleic acid segment of claim 14 further defined as comprising a promoter sequence for the second protein.
16. The nucleic acid segment of claim 10 further defined as a DNA segment.
17. The nucleic acid segment of claim 10 further defined as comprising a map region essentially as set forth in FIG. 1, line 4 or line 5.
18. The nucleic acid segment of claim 10 further defined as transcribing a mRNA which initiates at approximately nucleotide position +1000 as distanced from the herpes U_L26 transcription initiation site designated (+1), said RNA being translated from the methionine initiation codon located at position +1099 of the U_L26 transcriptional unit.
19. A nucleic acid segment comprising a nucleotide sequence which corresponds to at least an approximately 14 nucleotide base long segment of the DNA sequence of FIG. 1B, said segment capable of hybridizing to a segment of a herpes serine protease under stringent conditions.
20. The nucleic acid segment of claim 19 further defined as comprising a nucleotide sequence which corresponds to at least an approximately 20 nucleotide base long segment of herpes serine protease coding sequence.
21. The nucleic acid segment of claim 20 further defined as comprising a nucleotide sequence which corresponds to at least an approximately 25 nucleotide base long segment of the herpes serine protease coding sequence.
22. The nucleic acid segment of claim 21 further defined as comprising a nucleotide sequence which corresponds to at least an approximately 30 nucleotide base long segment of the herpes serine protease coding sequence.

23. A nucleic acid segment comprising a nucleotide sequence which corresponds to at least an approximately 14 nucleotide base segment, said segment capable of hybridizing to a nucleic acid segment capable of encoding a herpes ICP35 protein of the DNA sequence of FIG. 1B.
- 5 24. The nucleic acid segment of claim 23 further defined as comprising at least an approximately 20 nucleotide base long segment.
25. The nucleic acid segment of claim 24 further defined as comprising at least an approximately 25 nucleotide base long segment.
- 10 26. The nucleic acid segment of claim 25 further defined as comprising at least an approximately 30 nucleotide base long segment.
27. A nucleic acid segment of the herpes genome having the following properties:
 - 15 (a) located downstream of the *Hpa*I cleavage site of the U_L26 herpes open reading frame between the thymidine kinase gene and the glycoprotein gB gene;
 - (b) includes a promoter sequence capable of regulating the nucleic acid coding sequence of the family ICP35 herpes capsid proteins;
 - (c) includes the nucleic acid coding sequence of the ICP35 herpes capsid family proteins; and
 - 20 (d) capable of encoding proteins expressed in transfected cells superinfected with HSV-1 or HSV-2.
28. A purified herpes protein comprising at least a proteolytic module and having the following properties:
 - (a) an approximate molecular weight of 75 to 85kd as determined by SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis;
 - 25 (b) an amino acid domain of approximately 450-635 residues; and
 - (c) a protease cleavage site located about 18-25 amino acids from the carboxyl terminal.
29. The protein of claim 28 further defined as comprising a protein used in producing a herpes virus capsid.
- 30 30. A factor which is capable of effecting cleavage of precursor proteins in a trans position to yield the protein products designated as herpes capsid family ICP35 e and f.
31. A recombinant expression vector comprising a nucleic acid sequence encoding a herpes protease wherein the vector is capable of expressing said protease in a host cell.
- 35 32. The recombinant expression vector of claim 31 wherein the nucleic acid sequence comprises a domain designated II of the herpes protease, having histidine residues at positions 61 and 148.
- 40 33. Nucleic acid segments functionally equivalent to the segments incorporated in the recombinant plasmids designated A-Z and AA-NN according to FIG. 1A.
34. The nucleic acid segments of claim 33 further defined as operably linked to the non-herpes derived components of plasmids A-Z and AA-NN of FIG. 1A or their functional equivalents.
- 45 35. A recombinant vector comprising a nucleic acid segment in accordance with any one of claims 10 through 27.
36. The recombinant vector of claim 35 further identified as an expression vector.
- 50 37. The recombinant expression vector of claim 36 further identified as comprising a eukaryotic promoter.
38. The recombinant expression vector of claim 37, further defined as comprising an α 4, U_L26.5 or U_L26 promoter.
- 55 39. A recombinant host cell comprising a nucleic acid segment in accordance with any one of claims 10-27, or a vector in accordance with any one of claims 31-38.

40. The host cell of claim 39 further defined as a eukaryotic cell.

41. The recombinant host cell of claim 40 further defined as capable of expressing at least a proteolytic domain of a herpes protease protein or peptide, comprising a promoter and a polyadenylation signal at position 3' of the carboxyl terminal amino acid of the protein or peptide, said promoter being positioned within a transcriptional unit of the encoded protein.

42. A method of preparing a herpes protease, said method comprising the steps of:

- (a) preparing a nucleic acid segment capable of encoding the protease in accordance with claims 10, 18, 22 or 27; and
- (b) expressing the segment to produce the protease.

43. The method of claim 42 wherein the segment is transferred into a host cell and the host cell is cultured under conditions suitable for expression of the segment.

44. The method of claim 43 wherein the nucleic acid segment is transferred by transfection or transformation of a recombinant vector into the host cell.

45. The method of claim 42 further comprising isolating and purifying the protein.

46. A method of synthesizing a herpes protease comprising transcription or translation of nucleic acid segments according to claims 10, 18, 22 or 27 in cell a free system.

47. The method of claim 46 wherein the cell free system comprises a rabbit reticulocyte lysate.

48. A promoter of approximately 135-168 base pairs in length located within the *HpaI-PstI* cleavage sites in the first open reading frame of claim 13, and capable of initiating expression of the second protein of claim 13.

49. A method of preparing the nucleic acid segment of claims 10, 18, 22 or 27 comprising the following steps:

- (a) obtaining nucleic acids from herpes infected cells;
- (b) amplifying a proteolytic site-conserved nucleic acid sequence region of a herpes protein within the nucleic acids;
- (c) preparing recombinant clones which include said amplified nucleic acid sequences; and
- (d) selecting clones which comprise the desired amplified nucleic acid segments.

50. A method of cleaving a herpes molecule, said method comprising treating the molecule with the protease of claim 1 under conditions effective for cleavage.

51. A method for detecting the protease of claim 1 or the protein of claim 28 in tissue samples, said method comprising the following steps:

- (a) preparing an antibody directed against the protease or the protein;
- (b) labelling the antibody;
- (c) contacting the tissue samples with the labelled antibody; and
- (d) detecting the labelled antibody-protein (protease) heteroconjugate.

52. The method of claim 51 wherein the labelled antibody is further defined as comprising a fluorescent label.

53. A method of detecting a nucleic acid segment in biological samples, said method comprising the following steps:

- (a) preparing a nucleotide probe which is capable of hybridizing to the nucleic acid segment substantially as set forth in FIG. 1A, line 5 or 6, FIG. 1B, or in claims 10, 18, 22 or 27;
- (b) incubating the probe with the biological sample to be tested under selective conditions appropriate for the formation of specific hybrids; and
- (c) detecting the formation of specific hybrids between the probe and the nucleic acids of the biological sample by detecting a label, the formation of such hybrids being indicative of the

presence of the nucleic acid.

54. A method of treatment for herpes virus infections comprising:
 - (a) preparing an effective amount of an inhibitor of the protease of claim 1, or the protein of claim 28;
 - 5 (b) combining the inhibitor with a pharmacologically acceptable carrier to form a pharmaceutical composition; and
 - (c) administering a therapeutic amount of the composition to cells or organisms infected with herpes virus.
- 10 55. The method of claim 54 wherein the herpes virus comprises herpes simplex virus type I.
56. A pharmaceutical composition for the treatment of a herpes infection comprising a therapeutically effective amount of herpes protease inhibitor in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
- 15 57. A method for determining the ability of a candidate substance to modify the action of a virus protease, said method comprising:
 - (a) preparing a virus protease;
 - (b) combining the protease with the candidate inhibitor substance in a reaction mixture;
 - (c) introducing into the mixture a substrate capable of being cleaved by the protease; and
 - 20 (d) determining whether the candidate substance has modified the action of the protease on the substrate.
58. The method of claim 57 wherein the virus protease is according to claim 1.
- 25 59. The method of claim 57 wherein the candidate substance comprises chymostatin, diisopropyl, fluorophosphate or phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride.
60. The method of claim 57 wherein the virus protease is prepared through the application of recombinant genetic technology.
- 30 61. The method of claim 60 wherein the virus protease is prepared by:
 - (a) preparing an expression vector including at least a nucleic acid sequence encoding for the proteolytic domain of the virus protease;
 - (b) placing the expression vector in an appropriate host cell under conditions which permit
 - 35 expression of the coding sequence; and
 - (c) collecting the protease from the cell.
62. The method of claim 57, wherein it is determined whether the candidate substance has exerted an inhibitory effect upon the action of the protease on the substrate.
- 40 63. A method of preparing a herpes protease comprising the steps of:
 - (a) obtaining a sample which contains herpes virus;
 - (b) homogenizing the sample; and
 - (c) fractionating the homogenate to obtain a protease fraction.
- 45 64. A nucleic acid segment capable of hybridization with the coding sequence of a herpes protease, said hybrid inhibiting transcription of the mRNA from which the protease is translated.
- 50 65. A method for selecting a viral protease comprising the steps of:
 - (a) preparing an amino acid sequence comprising at least a cleavage site of the protease of claim 1 or the protein of claim 28;
 - (b) obtaining a candidate viral protease;
 - (c) contacting the candidate protease with the cleavage - site containing amino acid sequence; and
 - 55 (d) determining whether cleavage has occurred.
66. An inhibitor of the herpes protease of claim 1.
67. The inhibitor of claim 66 selected in accordance with the method of claim 57.

68. An antibody capable of binding to the herpes protease of claim 1.

69. The antibody of claim 67, further identified as capable of at least partially inhibiting or neutralizing the proteolytic functions of the protease.

5

70. The herpes protease of claim 6, wherein domain IV comprises ICP35.

10

15

20

25

30

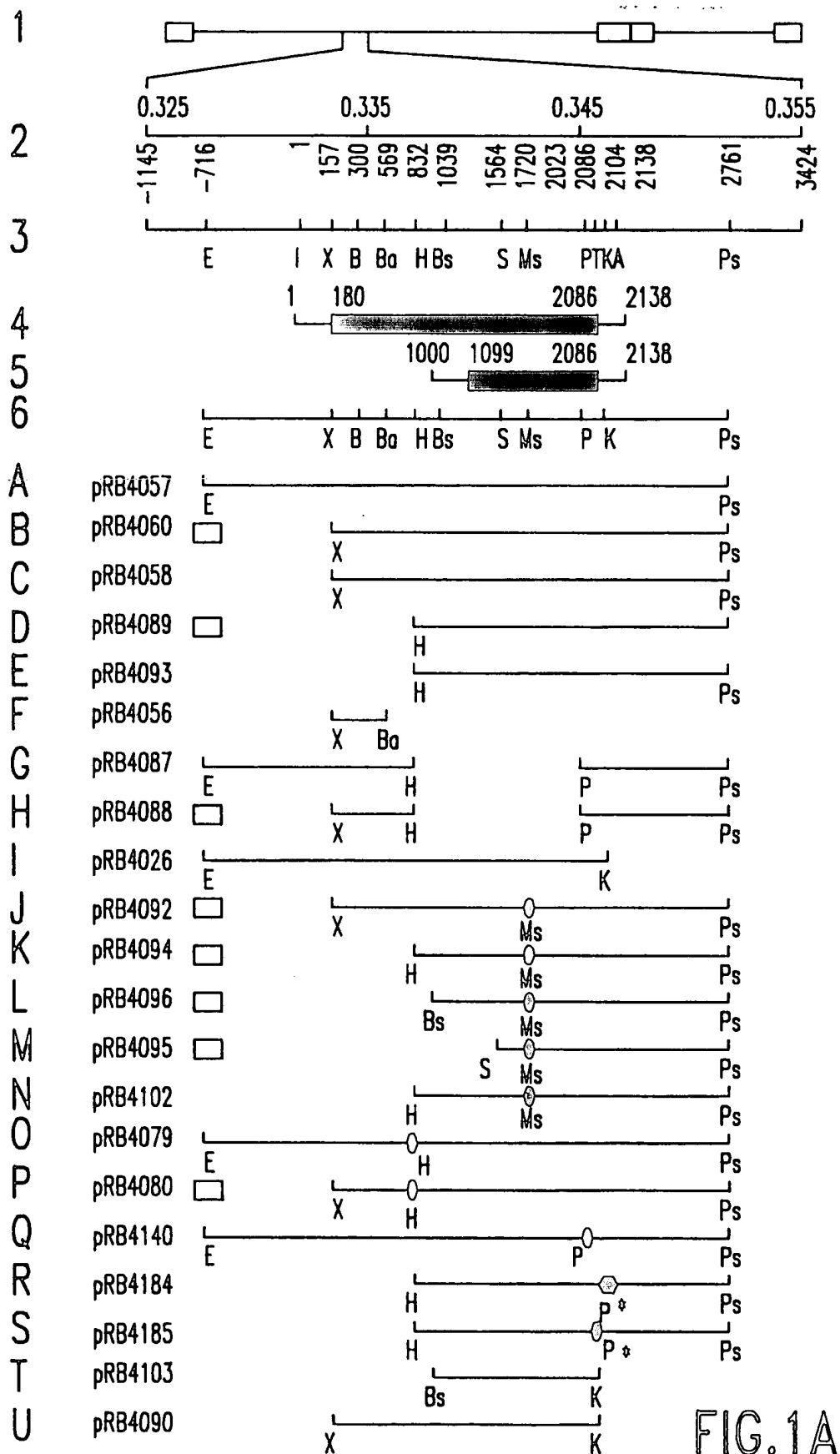
35

40

45

50

55



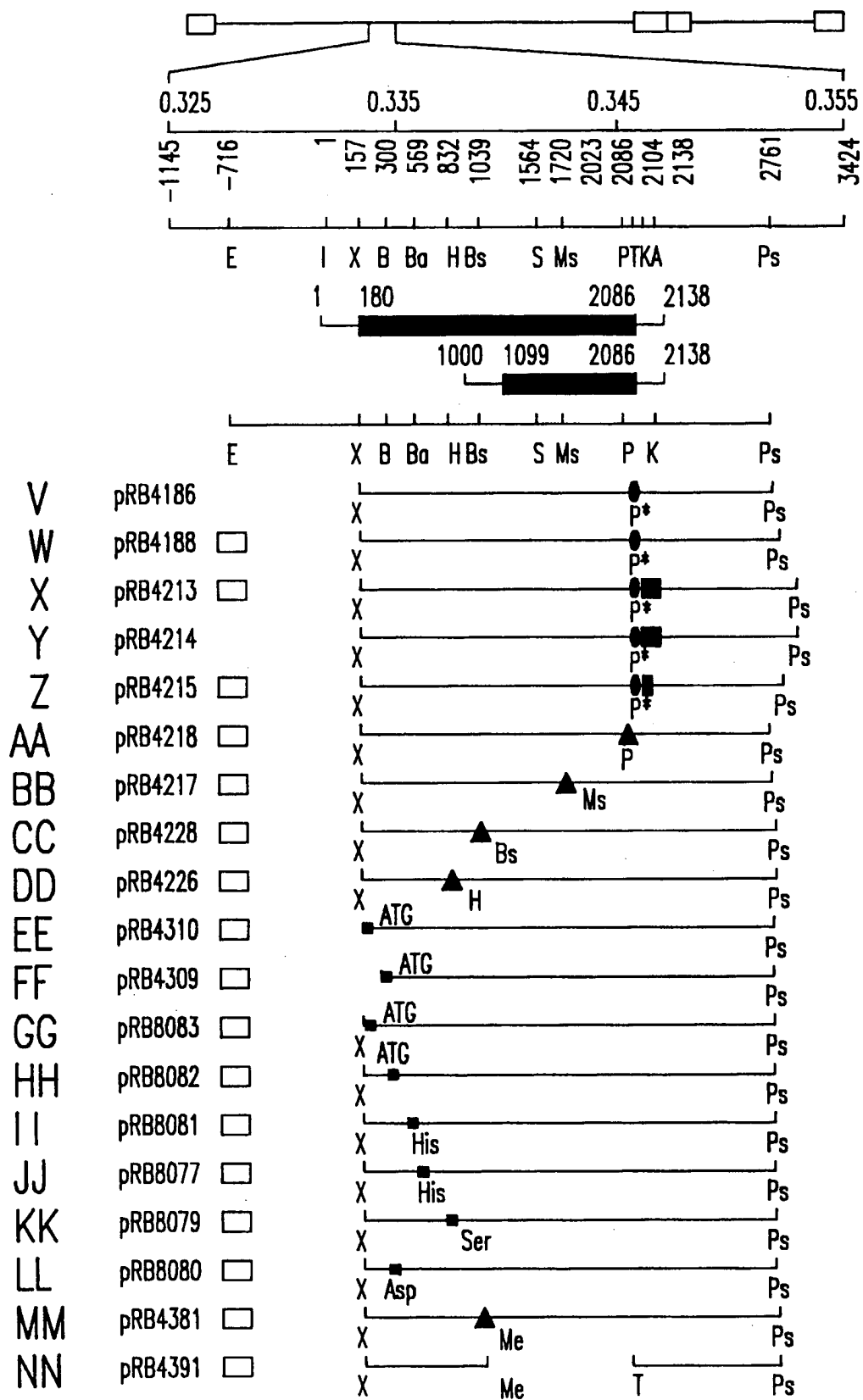


FIG.1A CONT.

1 MetAlaAlaAspAlaProGlyAspArgMetGluGluProLeuProAspArgAlaValPro
 ATGCAGCCGATGCCCGGAGACCGGATGAGAGACCCCTGCCCGACAGGCCCGTCCCC
 TACCGTCGGCTACGGGGCCCTCTGGCCTACCTCCTCGGGACGGGCTGTCCCGGCACGGG
 61 IleTyrValAlaGlyPheLeuAlaLeuTyrAspSerGlyAspSerGlyGluLeuAlaLeu
 ATTTACGTGGCTGGTTTTTTGGCCCTGTATACAGCGGGACTCGGGCAGTTGGCATTG
 TAAATGCACCGACCCAAAACCGGGACATACTGTGCCCCCTGAGCCCGCTCAACCGTAAC
 121 AspProAspThrValArgAlaAlaLeuProProAspAsnProLeuProIleAsnValAsp
 GATCCGGATACGTCGGGGCCCTGCTCCGGATAACCCACTCCCGATTAAACGTGGAC
 CTAGGCCATATGCCACGCCCGCGGGACGGAGCCCTATTGGGTGAGGGCTAATTGCCACCTG
 181 HisArgAlaGlyCysGluValGlyArgValLeuAlaValValAspProArgGlyPro
 CACCGCGCTGGCTCGAGGTGGGGGGTGTGGCCGTGGTTCGACGACCCCGCGGGCCG
 GTGGCGGACCGACGCTCCACCCCGCCACGACCGGACCGACTGCTGGGGGCGCCCGG
 241 PhePheValGlyLeuIleAlaCysValGlnLeuGluArgValLeuGluThrAlaAlaSer
 TTTTTCGTGGGCTGATCGCCTGCGTGCAGCTGGAGCGCGTCTCTCGAGACGGCCGACG
 AAAAAACACCCCGACTAGCGGACGACGTCGACCTCGCGCAGGAGCTCTGCCCGCGGTCTG
 301 AlaAlaIlePheGluArgArgGlyProProLeuSerArgGluGluArgLeuLeuTyrLeu
 GCTGCGATTTTCGAGCGCCGCGGGCCGCTCTCCGGGAGGAGCGCCTGTGTACCTG
 CGACGCTAAAGCTCGCGGGCCCGGGGCGGAGAGGGCCCTCCTCGCGGACAACATGGAC

FIG.1B(I)

IleThrAsnTyrLeuProSerValSerLeuAlaThrLysArgLeuGlyGluAlaHis
361 ATCAACCAACTACCTGCCCTCGGTCTCCCTGGCCACAAACGCTGGGGCGGAGGCGCAC
TAGTGGTTGATGGACGGGAGCCAGAGGACCGGTGTTTTCGGACCCCCCGCTCCGGCTG

ProAspArgThrLeuPheAlaHisValAlaLeuCysAlaIleGlyArgArgLeuGlyThr
421 CCCGATCCGACCGCTGTTCCGCGCACCTCGCGCTGTGCGCATCGGGCGGCGCTCGGCACT
GGGCTAGCGTCCGACAAAGCGCGTGCAGCGCGACACGGCTAGCCCGCGCGGAGCCGTGA

IleValThrTyrAspThrGlyLeuAspAlaAlaIleAlaProPheArgHisLeuSerPro
481 ATCGTCACCTACGACACCGGTCTCGACGCGCCCATCGCGCCCTTTCGCCACCTGTCCGCCG
TAGCAGTGGATGCTGTGGCCACAGCTCGCGCGGTAGCGCGGGAAGCGGTGGACAGCGCGC

AlaSerArgGluGlyAlaArgArgLeuAlaAlaGluAlaLeuAlaLeuSerGlyArg
541 GCGTCTCGCGAGGGCGGCGGCGACTGGCGCGCGAGCGCGAGCTCGCGCTGTCCGGCGCG
CGCAGAGCGCTCCCCCGCGCGCTGACCGCGCGCTCCGGCTCGAGCGCGACAGCGCGCGC

ThrTrpAlaProGlyValGluAlaLeuThrHisThrLeuLeuSerThrAlaValAsnAsn
601 ACCTGGGCGCGCGCGGTGGAGGCGCTGACCCACACGCTGCTTCCACCGCGCTTAACAAC
TGGACCGCGCGCGCGCACCTCCGCGACTGGGTGTGCGACGAAAGGTGGCGGCAATTGTG

MetMetLeuArgAspArgTrpSerLeuValAlaGluArgArgGlnAlaGlyIleAla
661 ATGATGCTCGCGGACCGCTGGAGCCTGGTGGCCGAGCGCGCGCGGAGCGCGGATCGCC
TACTACGACGCGCGCTGGCGACCTCGGACCAACCGGCTCGCGCGCGCGCTCGCGCGCTAGCGG

FIG.1B (II)

GlyHisThrTyrLeuGlnAlaSerGluLysPheLysMetTrpGlyAlaGluProValSer
 721 GGACACACCTACCTCCAGCGAGCGAAAAATTCAAAATGTGGGGGGGAGCCTGTTTCC
 CCTGTGTGATGGAGTCCGCTCGCTTTTAAAGTTTACACCCCCCGCCTCGGACAAAGG

AlaProAlaArgGlyTyrLysAsnGlyAlaProGluSerThrAspIleProProGlySer
 781 GCGCCGGCGCGCGGTATAAGAACGGGCCCCGGAGTCCACGGACATACCGCCCGCTCG
 CCGCGCCGGCGCCCATATTCTTGCCCCGGGGCCTCAGGTGCTGTATGGCGGGCGGAGC

IleAlaAlaProGlnGlyAspArgCysProIleValArgGlnArgGlyValAlaLeu
 841 ATCGCTGCCGCGCGCGAGGTGACCGGTGCCCAATCGTCCGTACGCCGGGTCCCTTG
 TAGCAGCGCGCGGTCCCACTGCCACGGGTAGCAGGCAGTCCGCCCCAGCGGAAC

SerProValLeuProProMetAsnProValProThrSerGlyThrProAlaProAlaPro
 901 TCCCCGTACTGCCCCCATGAACCCCGTTCCGACATCGGCACCCCGCCCGCCCGCG
 AGGGCCCATGACGGGGGTACTTGGGGCAAGGCTGTAGCCCGTGGGGCGGGCGCGCG

ProGlyAspGlySerTyrLeuTrpIleProAlaSerHisTyrAsnGlnLeuValAlaGly
 961 CCGGGCGACGGGAGCTACCTGTGGATCCGGCCCTCCCATTAACAACAGCTCGTCCCGCG
 GGGCCGCTGCCCTCGATGGACACCTAGGGCCGGAGGGTAATGTTGTCGAGCAGCGGGCG

HisAlaAlaProGlnProGlnProHisSerAlaPheGlyPheProAlaAlaAlaGlySer
 1021 CATGCCGGCGCCCAACCCAGCGCATTCGGCGTTTGGTTTCCCGGCTGCGGGGGTCC
 GTACGGCGGGGTGGGGTCCGGCTAAGGCGCAACCAAGGGCCGACGCGCGCCCCCAGG

FIG. 1B(III)

1081 ValAlaTyrGlyProHisGlyAlaGlyLeuSerGlnHisTyrProProHisValAlaHis
GTGGCCTATGGCCTCAGGTCGGGTCTTTCCAGCATACCTCCTCCACGTCGCCCAT
CACCGATACCCGAGTGCCACGCCCCAGAAAGGTCGTAATGGAGGGTGCAGCGGGTA
1141 GlnTyrProGlyValLeuPheSerGlyProSerProLeuGluAlaGlnIleAlaAlaLeu
CAGTATCCGGGTGCTGTTCTCGGACCCAGCCACTCGAGCGCAGATAGCCCGCTTG
GTCATAGGGCCCCACGACAAAGAGCCCTGGGTCCGGTGAGCTCCGCGTCTATCGGGCGCAAC
1201 ValGlyAlaIleAlaAlaAspArgGlnAlaGlyGlyGlnProAlaAlaGlyAspProGly
GTGGGGCCATAGCCGGACCGCCAGCGGGCGGTACGCCGGCGGAGACCCCTGGG
CACCCCGGTATCGCGCCTGGCGTCCGCCCGCCAGTCCGCCGGCGCCCTCTGGGACCC
1261 ValArgGlySerGlyLysArgArgTyrGluAlaGlyProSerGluSerTyrCysAsp
GTCCGGGGTCCGGAAGCGTCGCCGTACGAGCGGGCGCTCGGAGTCTCTACTGCGAC
CAGGCCCCAGCCCTTTCGACGGGCCATGCTCCGCCCGCCAGCCTCAGGATGACGCTG
1321 GlnAspGluProAspAlaAspTyrProTyrProGlyGluAlaArgGlyAlaProArg
CAGGACGAACCGGACGCGACTACCCGTACTACCCCGGGAGGCTCGAGCGCGCGCGC
GTCCTGCTTGGCCTGCGCCTGATGGCATGATGGGCCCTCCAGCTCCGCCGGCGCG
1381 GlyValAspSerArgAlaAlaArgHisSerProGlyThrAsnGluThrIleThrAla
GGGTGCACTCCCGCGCGCGCCGCCATTCTCCGGGACCAACGAGACCATCAGCGCG
CCCCAGCTGAGGGCGCGCGCGGGCGGTAAAGAGGCCCTGGTTGCTCTGCTAGTCCCCG

FIG.1B (IV)

1441 LeuMetGlyAlaValThrSerLeuGlnGlnGluLeuAlaHisMetArgAlaArgThrSer
 CTGATGGGGGGGTGACGTCTCTGCAGCAGGAACCTGGCGCACATGCGGGCTCGACCCAGC
 GACTACCCCGCCACTGCAGAGACGTCGTCTTACCCGCGTGTACGCCCGCAGCCTGGTCCG

 1501 AlaProTyrGlyMetTyrThrProValAlaHisTyrArgProGlnValGlyGluProGlu
 GCCCCCTATGGAATGTACACGCCCGGTGGCGCACTATCGCCCTCAGGTGGGGAGCCCGAA
 CGGGGATACCTTACATGTGCGGCCACCGCGTGATAGCGGGAGTCCACCCCTCGGCCCTT

 1561 ProThrThrThrHisProAlaLeuCysProProGluAlaValTyrArgProProHis
 CCAACAACGACCCACCCGGCCCTTTGTCCCCCGGAGCGCGTGTATCGCCCCCACCACAC
 GGTGTGCTGCTGGTGGCCCGGAAACAGGGGCCCTCCGGCACATAGCGGGGGGTGCTGTG

 1621 SerAlaProTyrGlyProProGlnGlyProAlaSerHisAlaProThrProProTyrAla
 AGCGCCCCCTACGGTCCTCCCCAGGTCCTCGCGCTCCCATGCCCCCACTCCCCGTATGCC
 TCGCGGGGATGCCAGGAGGGTCCAGGCCCGCAGGGTACGGGGGTGAGGGGGCCATACGG

 1681 ProAlaAlaCysProProGlyProProProProProCysProSerThrGlnThrArgAla
 CCAGCTGCCCTGCCCGCCAGCCCGCCACCGCCCCCATGTCTTCCACCCAGACGCGCGCC
 GGTCGACGGACGGCGGTCCGGGGCGGTGGCGGGGTACAGGAAGGTGGGTCTGCGCGCGCG

 1741 ProLeuProThrGluProAlaPheProProAlaAlaThrGlySerGlnProGluAlaSer
 CCTCTACCGACGAGCCCGCGTTCCCCCCCCCGCCACCGGATCCCCAACCGGAGGCATCC
 GGAGATGGCTGCCCTCGGGCGCAAGGGGGGGCGGGGTGGCCCTAGGCTTGGCCCTCCGTAGG

FIG.1B(V)

AsnAlaGluAlaGlyAlaLeuValAsnAlaSerSerAlaAlaHisValAspValAspThr
1801 AACGGGAGGGCGGGCCCTTGTCACGCCAGCAGCGCACACACGTTGACACG
TTGGCCCTCCGGCCCCGGGAACAGTTGCCGTCGTCGCGTGCACCTGCAACTGTGC

AlaArgAlaAlaAspLeuPheValSerGlnMetMetGlyAlaArg
1861 GCCCGCGCGCCCGATTGTTCGTCCTCAGATGATGGGGGCCCCGC
CGGGCGCGCGGCTAAACAAGCAGAGAGTCTACTACCCCGGGCG

FIG. 1B (VI)

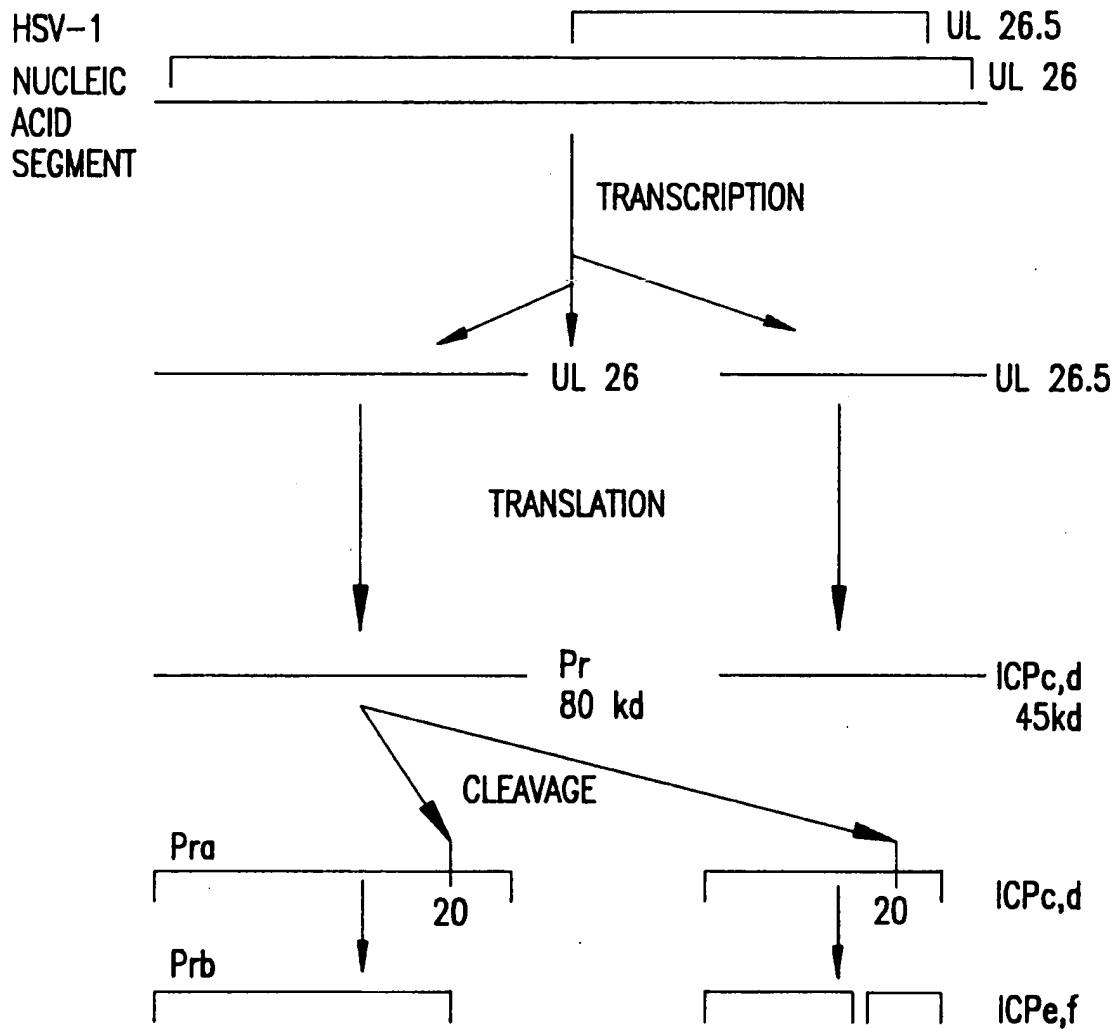


FIG.2

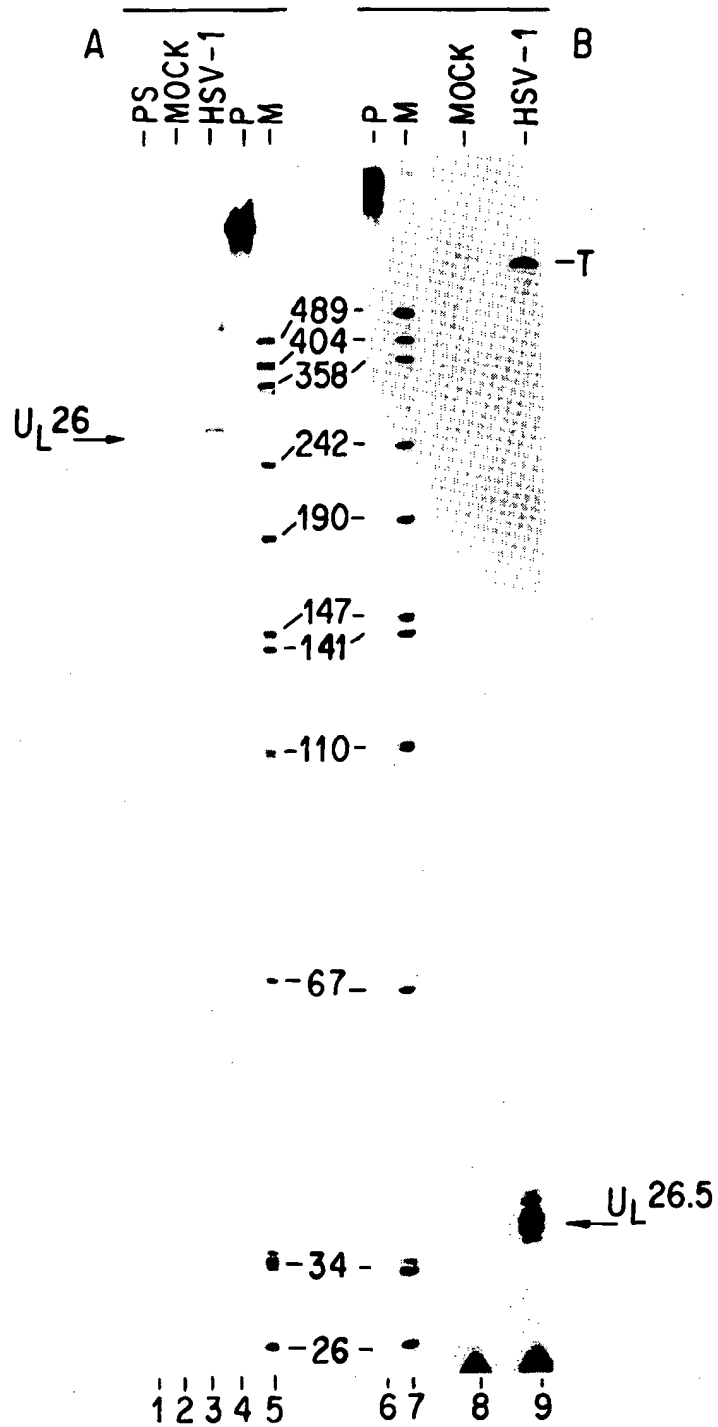


FIG. 3

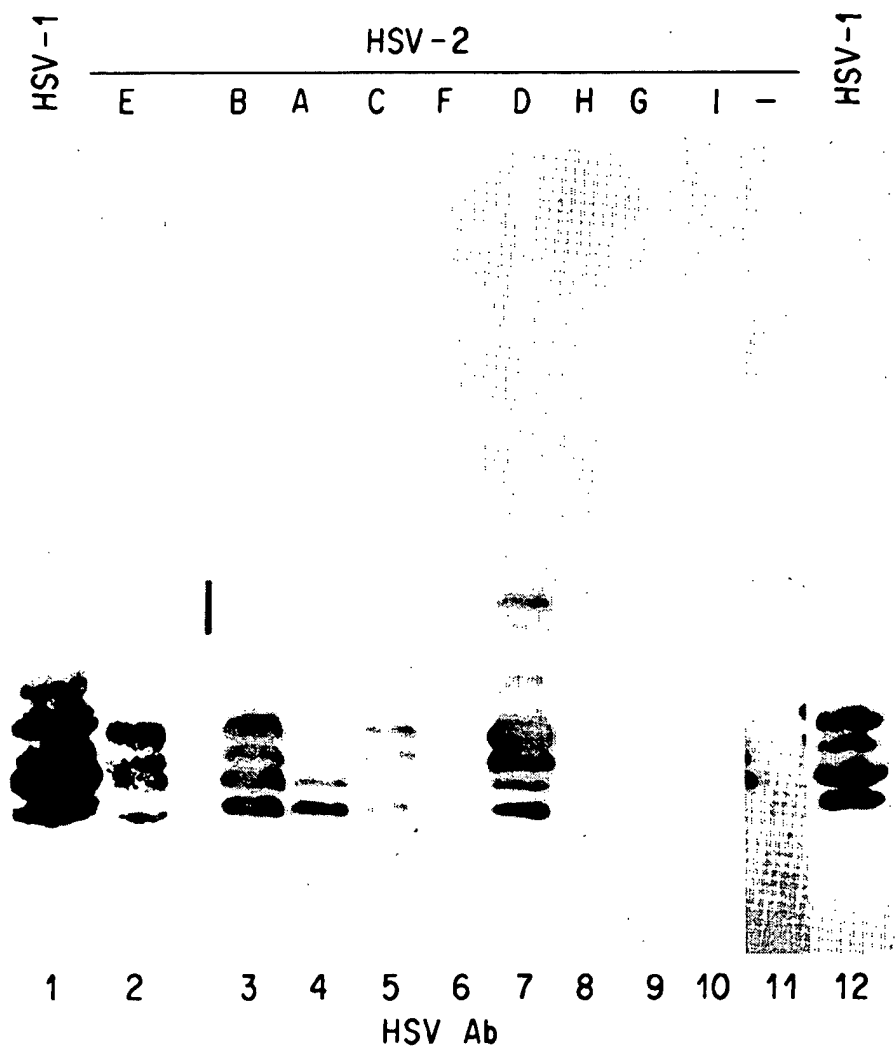


FIG. 4

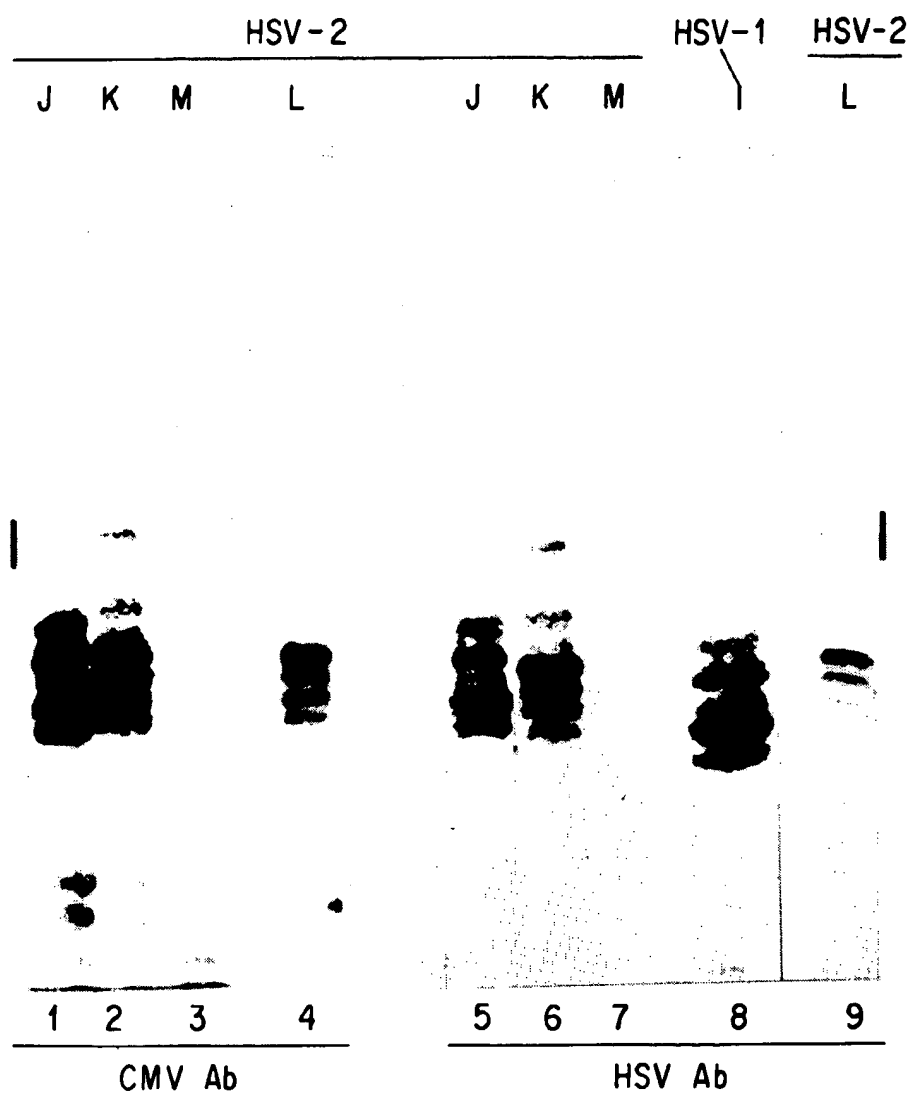


FIG. 5

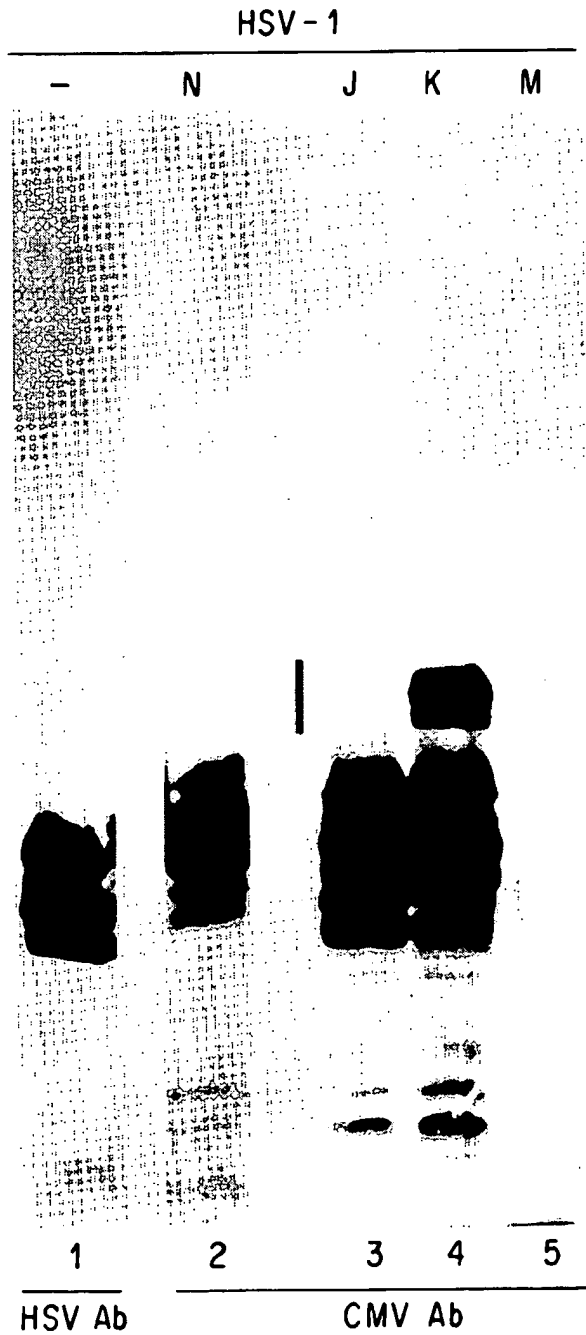


FIG. 6

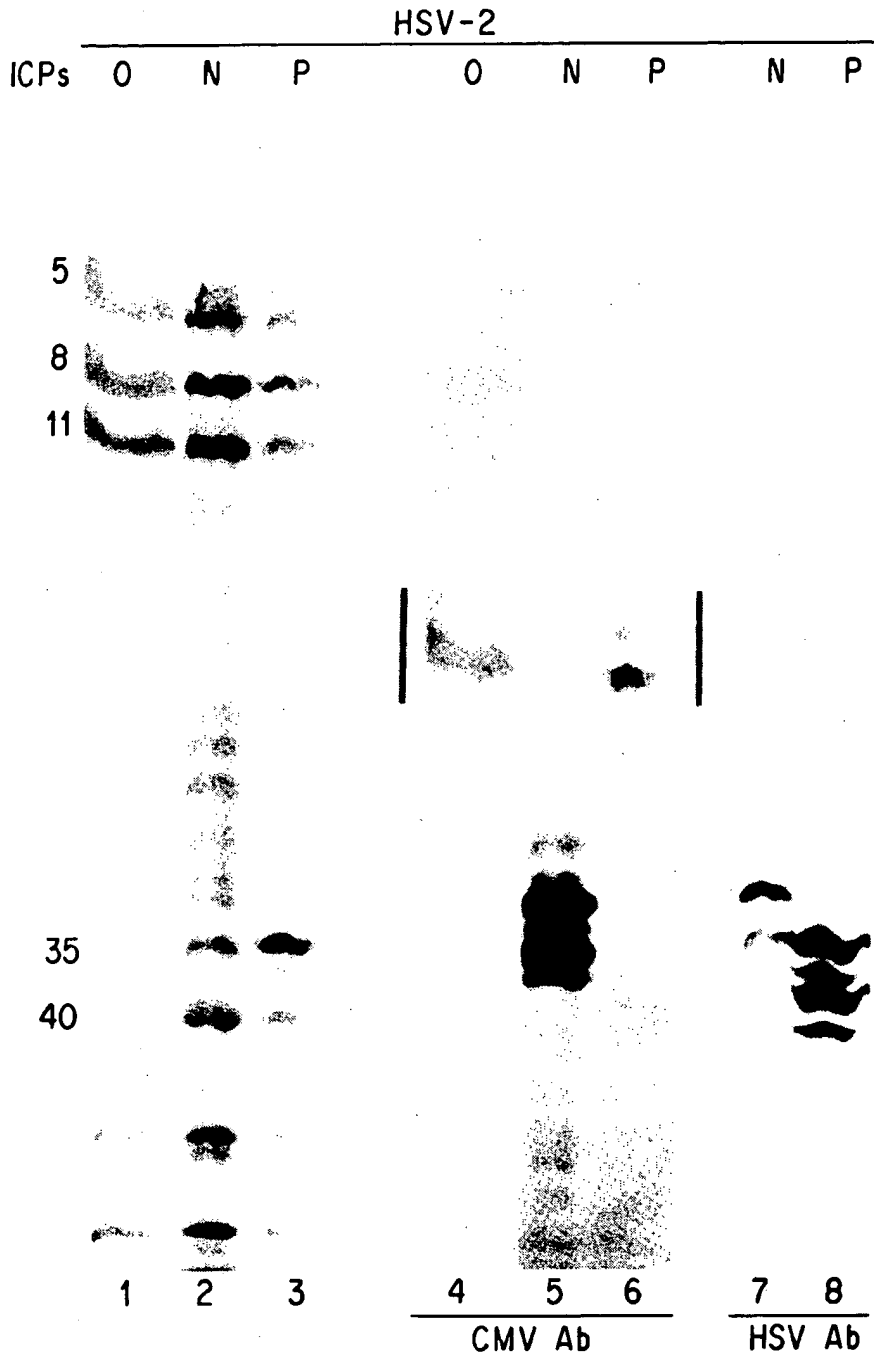


FIG. 7

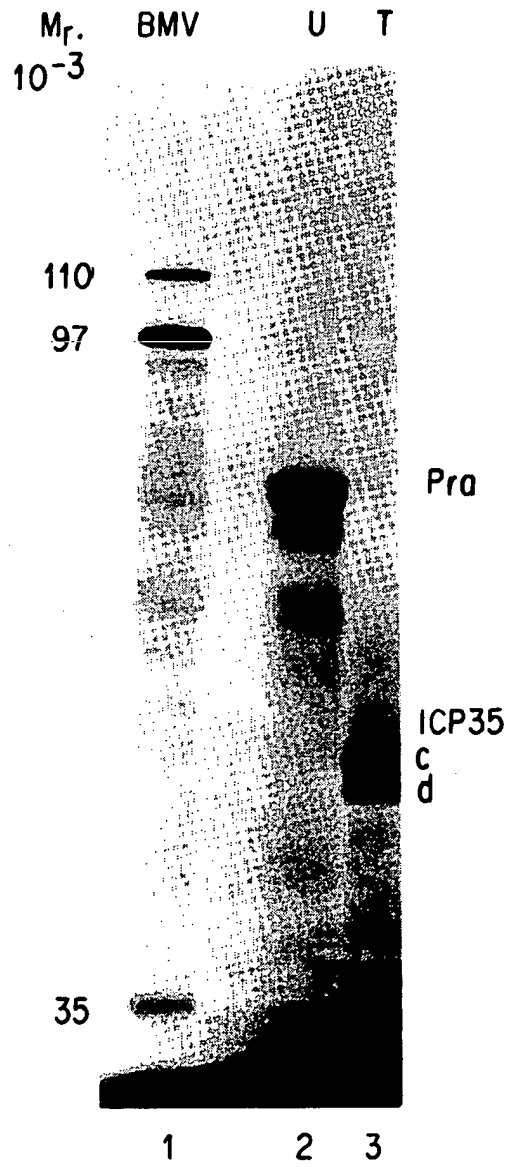
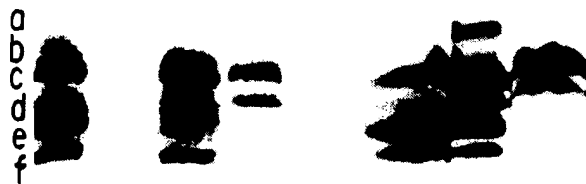


FIG. 8

HSV - 1							
34°	39°			34°	39°		
-	-	A	E	-	C	C	



1	2	3	4	5	6	7
HSV Ab						

FIG. 9

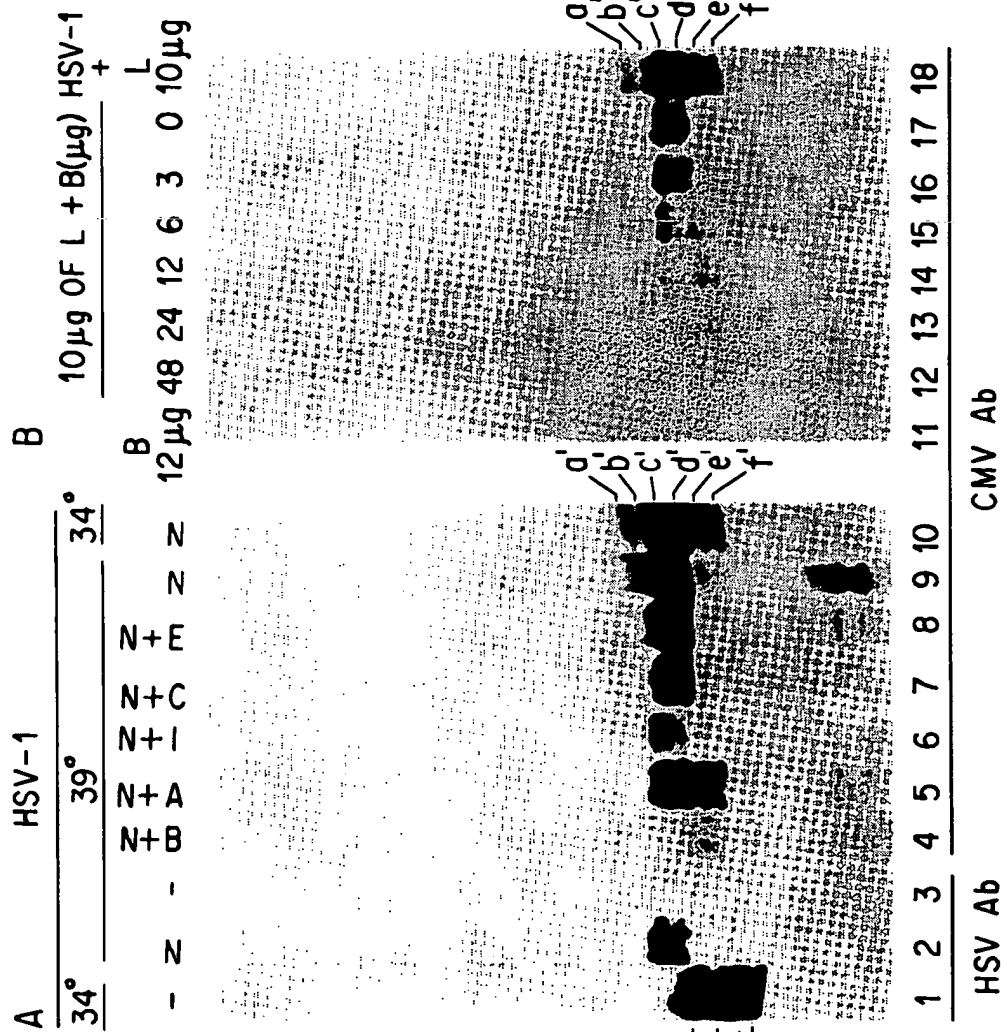
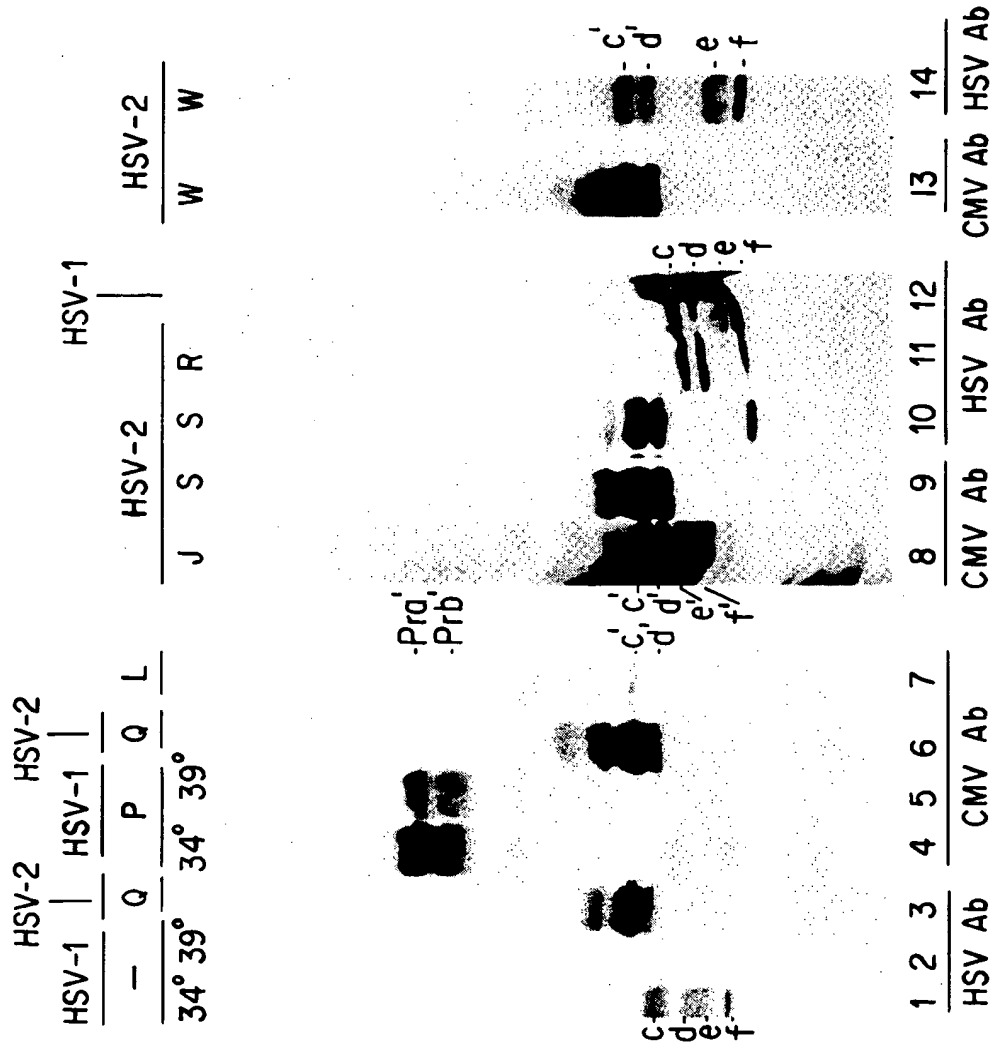


FIG. 10



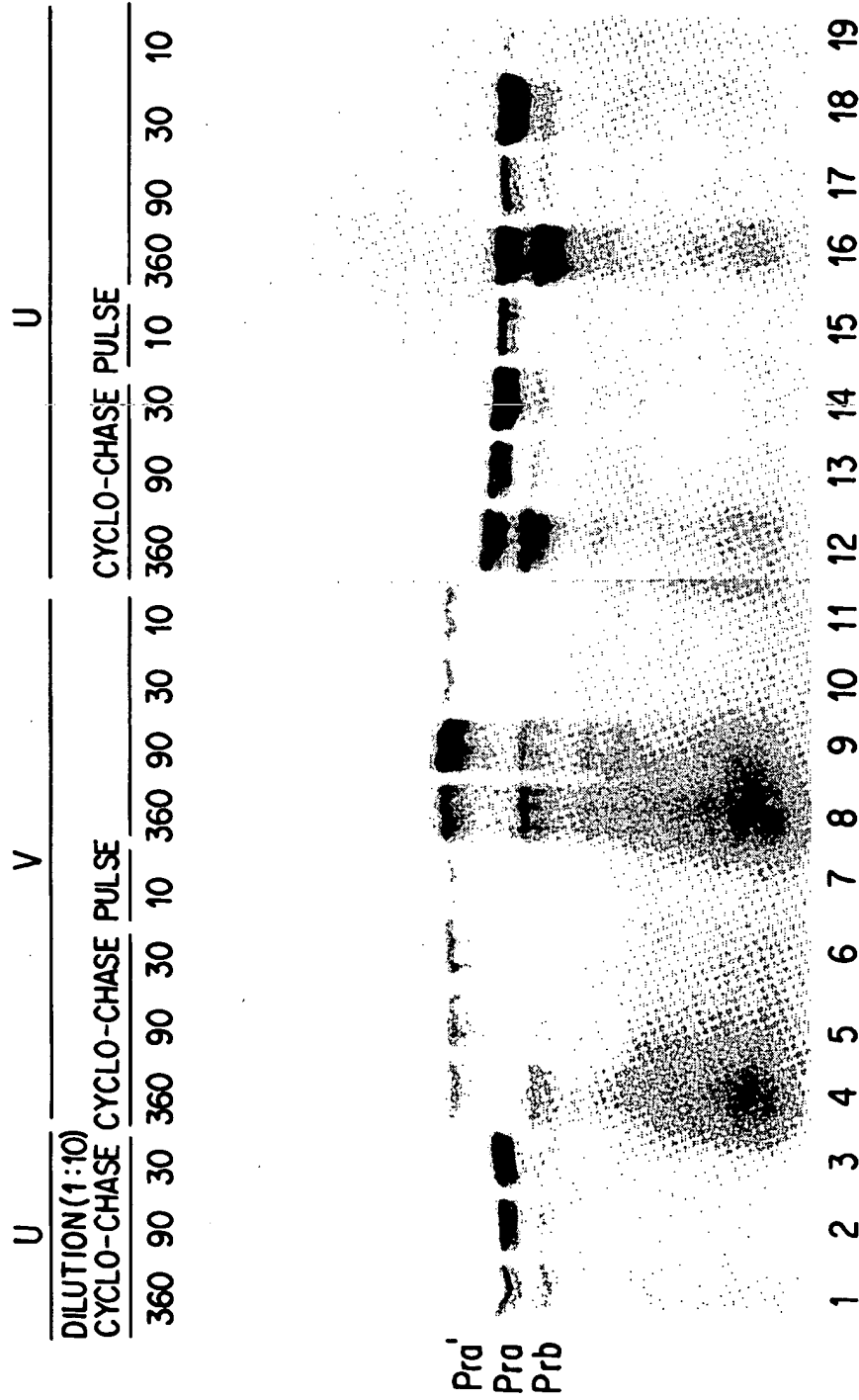


FIG. 12

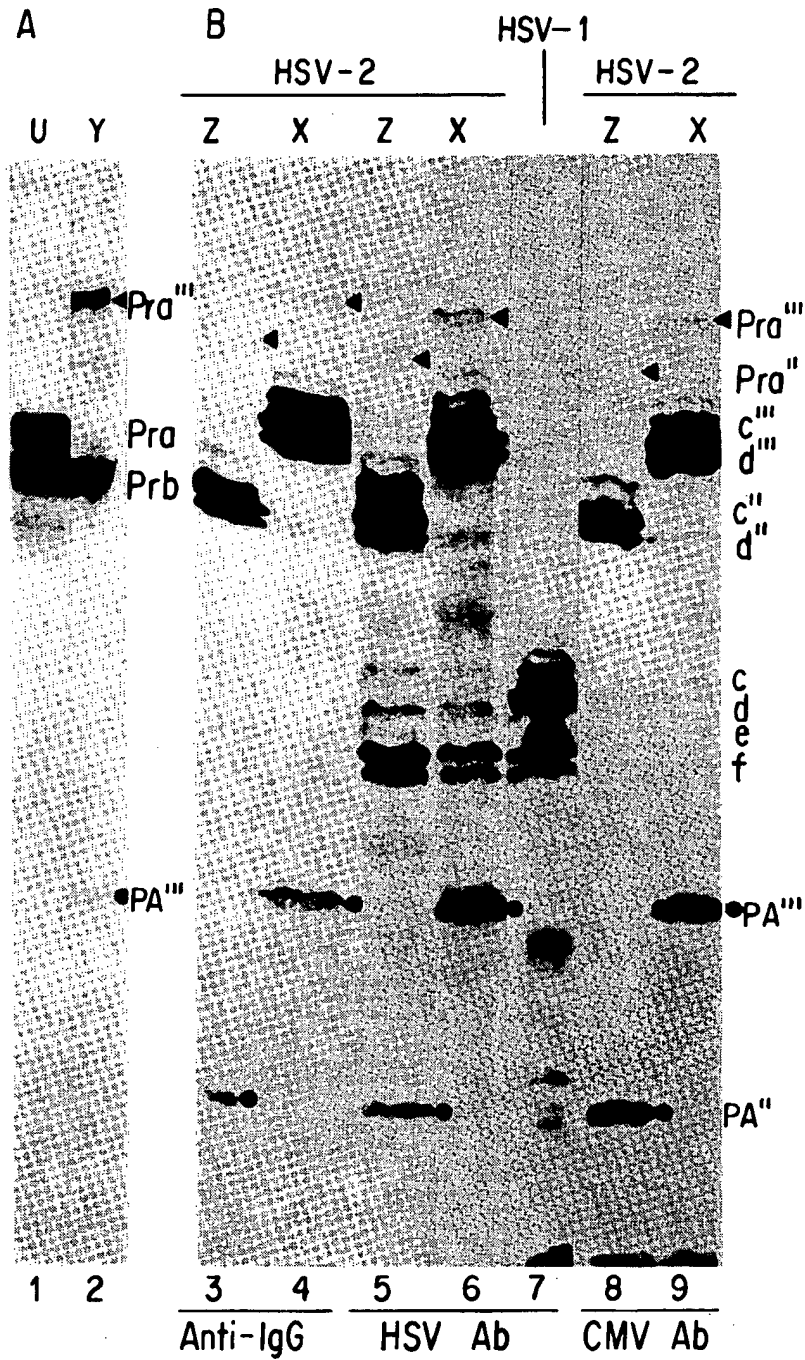


FIG. 13

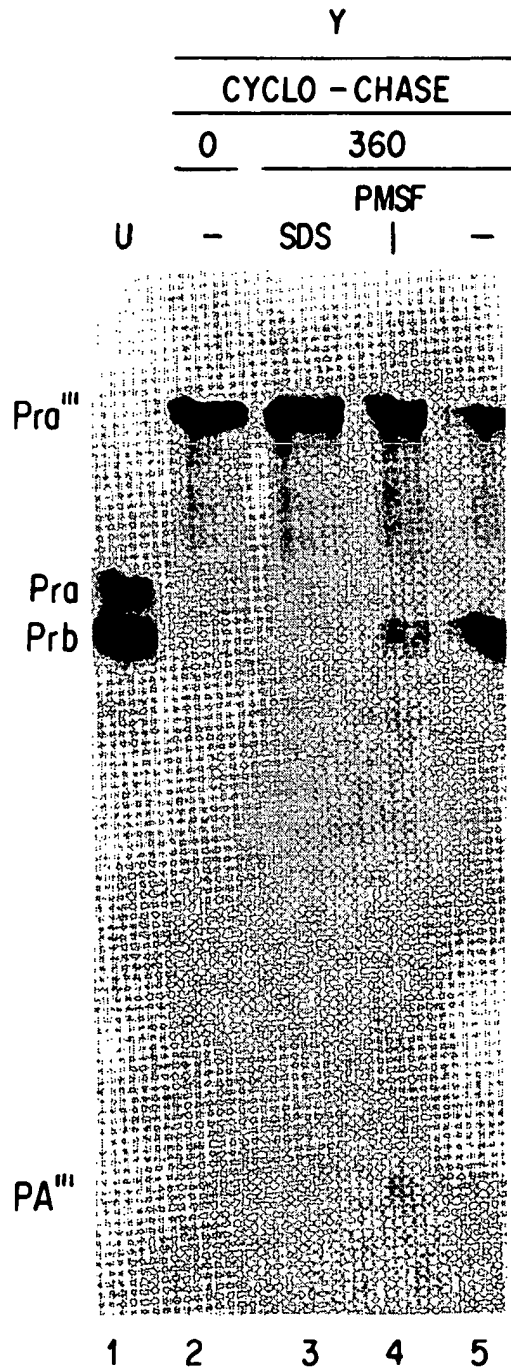


FIG. 14

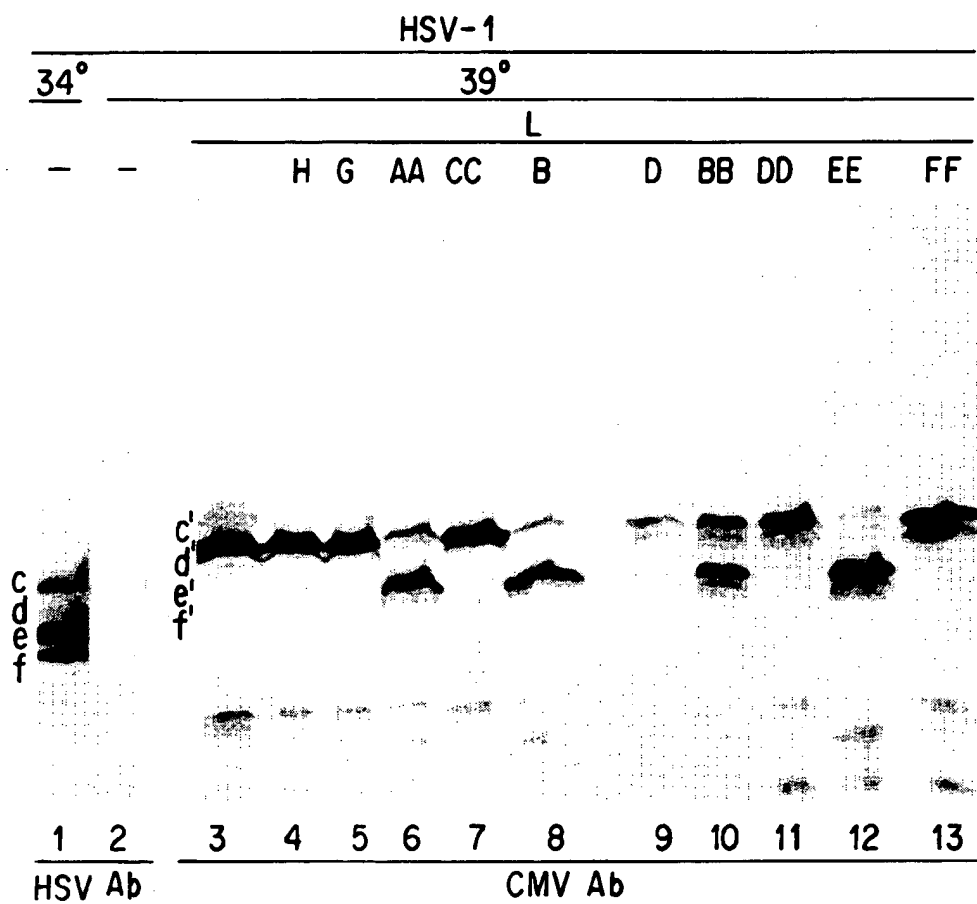


FIG. 15A

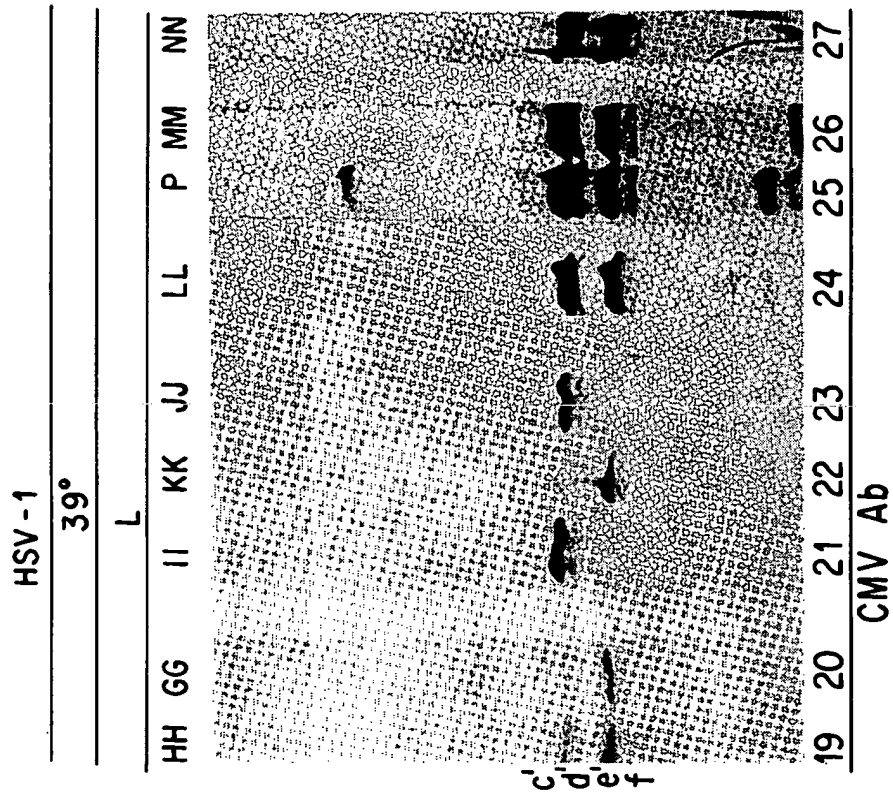


FIG. 15C

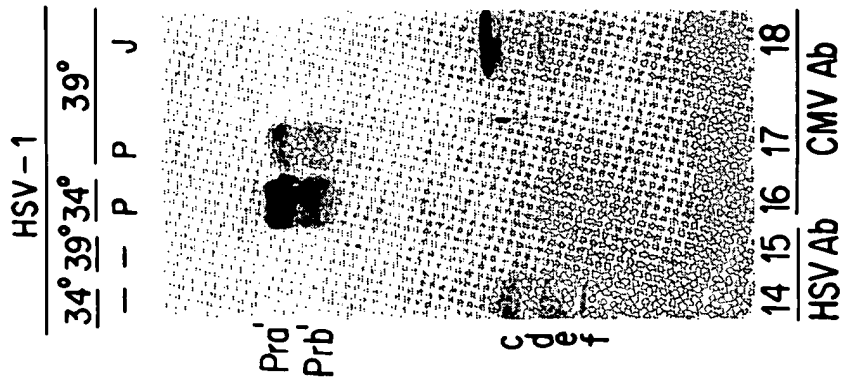


FIG. 15B

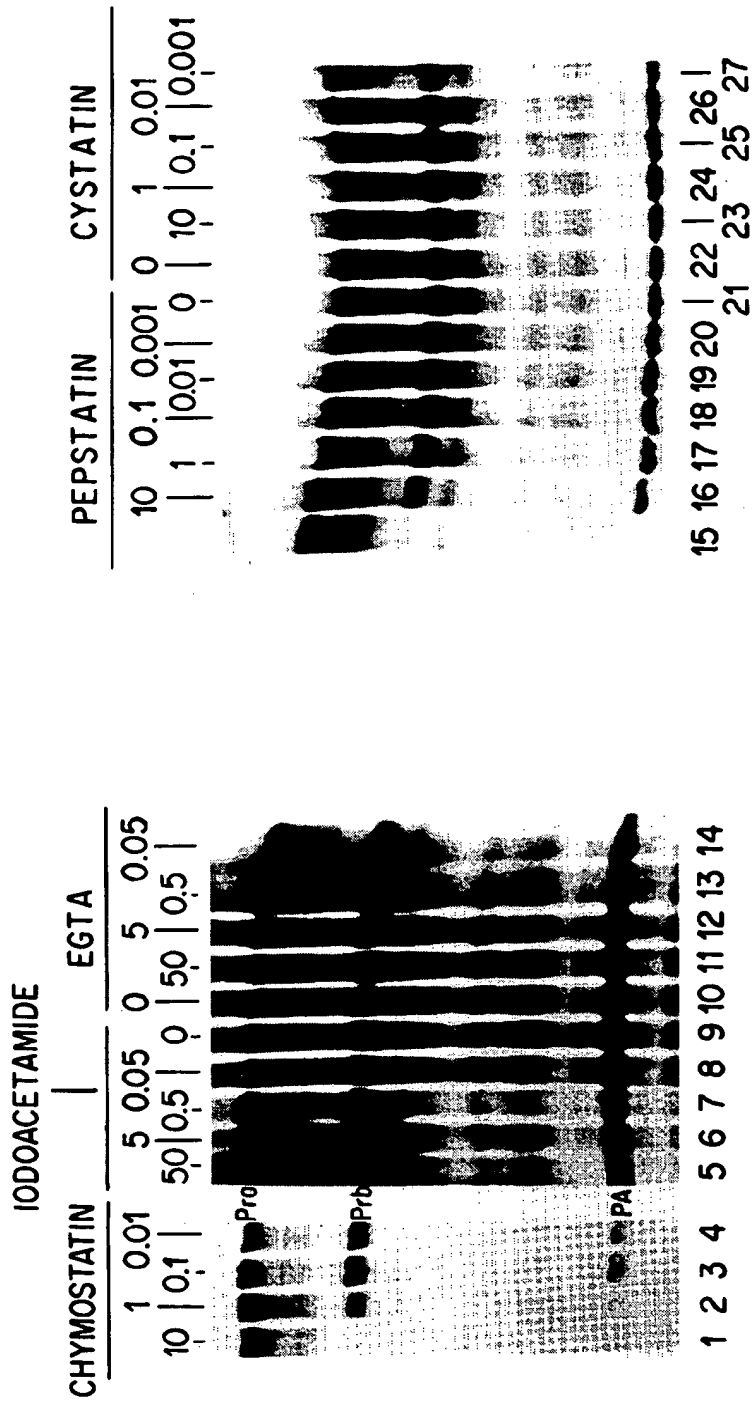


FIG. 16A

FIG. 16B

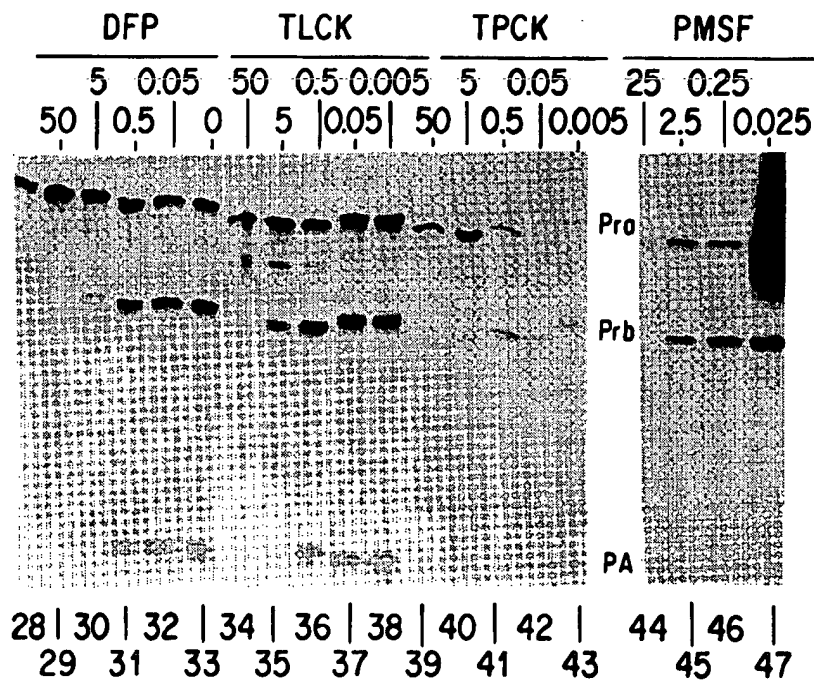


FIG. 16C



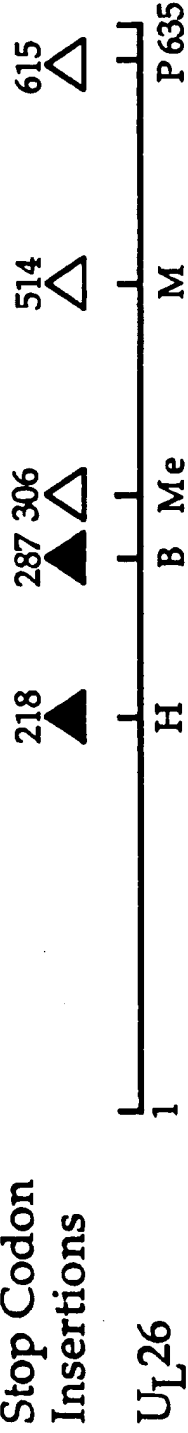
1 220

Deletions

1 32

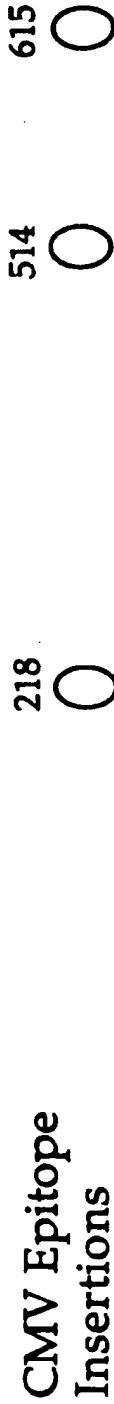
1 9

Stop Codon Insertions

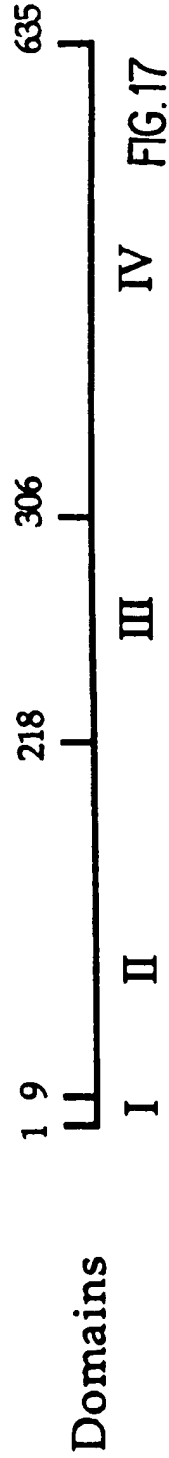


7 31 34 61 148 215
GDR DSG D H H S
SRT LDM A V A A

Substitutions

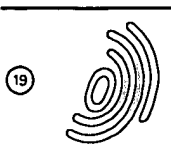


CMV Epitope Insertions



Domains

FIG.17



Eur päisches Patentamt
Eur pean Patent Offic
Office uropéen des brevets



⑪ Publication number: **0 514 830 A3**

⑫

EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

⑲ Application number: **92108420.8**

⑳ Date of filing: **19.05.92**

⑮ Int. Cl.⁵: **C12N 15/57, C12N 9/50,
C12N 15/38, C07K 15/00,
G01N 33/571, G01N 33/53,
C12Q 1/68, A61K 37/64**

⑳ Priority: **24.05.91 US 705814
07.02.92 US 832855**

㉑ Date of publication of application:
25.11.92 Bulletin 92/48

㉒ Designated Contracting States:
**AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IT LI LU MC
NL PT SE**

㉓ Date of deferred publication of the search report:
09.06.93 Bulletin 93/23

㉔ Applicant: **ARCH DEVELOPMENT
CORPORATION
1101 East 58th Street
Chicago, Illinois 60637(US)**

㉕ Inventor: **Roizman, Bernard
5555 Everett
Chicago, Illinois(US)
Inventor: Llu, Fenyong
5734 S. Maryland
Chicago, Illinois(US)**

㉖ Representative: **Brown, John David et al
FORRESTER & BOEHMERT
Franz-Joseph-Strasse 38
W-8000 München 40 (DE)**

㉗ **Methods and compositions of a preparation and use of a herpes protease.**

㉘ The present invention relates to the identification and purification of a herpes protease and a nucleic acid segment coding for two proteins. The first protein is the herpes protease which is able to cleave itself and also cleave the second protein. This protease is required for the assembly of the herpes virus capsid, therefore is essential for replication. The second protein has previously been designated as the family of proteins in viral infected cells, ICP35. The protease and its substrates are encoded by overlapping nucleic acid segments. This invention also relates to a promoter sequence for the second protein. Methods are presented of producing a viral protease, screening a protease inhibitor which may be used in a drug designed for the treatment of herpes disease, methods for treating herpes and other viral infections wherein the virus employs a protease substantially similar to the herpes protease, for capsid production. Methods for detecting herpes infections and other viral infections are also disclosed.

EP 0 514 830 A3



European Patent
Office

EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT

Application Number

EP 92 10 8420
PAGE1

DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT			
Category	Citation of document with indication, where appropriate, of relevant passages	Relevant to claim	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int. Cl.5)
D,Y	JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY vol. 65, no. 1, January 1991, BALTIMORE, US pages 206 - 212 F. LIU ET AL. 'The promoter, transcriptional unit, and coding sequence of herpes simplex virus 1 family 35 proteins are contained within and in frame with the U126 open reading frame' * the whole document *	1-22, 28-47, 49-50, 53, 63-65,70	C12N15/57 C12N9/50 C12N15/38 C07K15/00 G01N33/571 G01N33/53 C12Q1/68 A61K37/64
D,X	---	23-27,48	
Y	JOURNAL OF CELLULAR BIOCHEMISTRY SUPPLEMENT, PART G vol. 0, no. 15, 1991, US page 138 A.R. WELCH ET AL. 'Proteolytic processing of the cytomegalovirus assembly protein: is a viral gene responsible?' * abstract *	1-22, 28-47, 49-50, 53, 63-65,70	
P,X, D	JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY vol. 65, no. 10, October 1991, BALTIMORE, US pages 5149 - 5156 F. LIU ET AL. 'The herpes simplex virus 1 gene encoding a protease also contains within its coding domain the gene encoding the more abundant substrate' * the whole document *	1-53, 63-65, 68-70	TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int. Cl.5) C12N C07K
The present search report has been drawn up for all claims			
Place of search BERLIN		Date of completion of the search 29 MARCH 1993	Examiner JULIA P.
CATEGORY F CITED DOCUMENTS X : particularly relevant if taken alone Y : particularly relevant if combined with another document of the same category A : technological background O : non-written disclosure P : intermediate document T : theory or principle underlying the invention E : earlier patent document, but published on, or after the filing date D : document cited in the application L : document cited for other reasons * : member of the same patent family, corresponding document			



European Patent
Office

EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT

Application Number

EP 92 10 8420
PAGE2

DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT			
Category	Citation of document with indication, where appropriate, of relevant passages	Relevant to claim	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int. Cl.5)
P,X, D	PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES OF USA. vol. 88, no. 23, December 1991, WASHINGTON US pages 10792 - 10796 A.R. WELCH ET AL. 'A herpesvirus maturational proteinase, assemblin: identification of its gene, putative active site domain, and cleavage site' * the whole document *	1-53, 63-65, 68-70	
A	JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY vol. 49, no. 3, March 1984, BALTIMORE, US pages 947 - 959 L.E. HOLLAND ET AL. 'Transcriptional and genetic analyses of the herpes simplex virus type 1 genome: coordinates 0.29 to 0.45' * the whole document *	10-27, 33-49, 53,64	
A	JOURNAL OF GENERAL VIROLOGY vol. 71, no. 4, 1990, READING, BERKS, GB pages 841 - 850 A.M. GRIFFIN ET AL. 'Analysis of the nucleotide sequence of DNA from the region of the thymidine kinase gene of infectious laryngotracheitis virus; potential evolutionary relationships between the herpesvirus subfamilies' * the whole document *	10-27, 33-49, 53,64	TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int. Cl.5)
D,A	JOURNAL OF GENERAL VIROLOGY vol. 69, 1988, READING, BERKS, GB pages 1531 - 1574 D.J. MCGEOCH ET AL. 'The complete DNA sequence of the long unique region in the genome of herpes simplex virus type 1' * the whole document *	10-27, 33-49, 53,64	
The present search report has been drawn up for all claims			
Place of search BERLIN		Date of completion of the search 29 MARCH 1993	Examiner JULIA P.
CATEGORY OF CITED DOCUMENTS			
X : particularly relevant if taken alone Y : particularly relevant if combined with another document of the same category A : technological background : non-written disclosure P : intermediate document		T : theory or principle underlying the invention E : earlier patent document, but published on, or after the filing date D : document cited in the application L : document cited for other reasons ----- & : member of the same patent family, corresponding document	



European Patent
Office

EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT

Application Number

EP 92 10 8420
PAGE3

DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT			
Category	Citation of document with indication, where appropriate, of relevant passages	Relevant to claim	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int. Cl.5)
X	DE-A-3 800 233 (H. WOLF) * the whole document *	57,60-62	
X	BIOSIS PREVIEWS, BIOSIS, PHILADELPHIA, PA, US. ABSTRACT NO. 89067899 L. BJORCK ET AL. 'Cystatin C a human proteinase inhibitor blocks replication of herpes simplex virus' & Journal of Virology, 1990 vol. 64, no. 2, pages 941 - 943 * abstract *	66	
			TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int. Cl.5)
The present search report has been drawn up for all claims			
Place of search	Date of completion of the search	Examiner	
BERLIN	29 MARCH 1993	JULIA P.	
CATEGORY F CITED D CUMENTS		T : theory or principle underlying the invention E : earlier patent document, but published on, or after the filing date D : document cited in the application L : document cited for other reasons ----- & : member of the same patent family, corresponding document	
X : particularly relevant if taken alone Y : particularly relevant if combined with another document of the same category A : technological background : non-written disclosure P : intermediate document			

(19)



Europäisches Patentamt

European Patent Office

Office européen des brevets



(11)

EP 0 514 830 B1

(12)

EUROPEAN PATENT SPECIFICATION

(45) Date of publication and mention
of the grant of the patent:
03.05.2000 Bulletin 2000/18

(21) Application number: 92108420.8

(22) Date of filing: 19.05.1992

(51) Int. Cl.⁷: **C12N 15/57**, C12N 9/50,
C12N 15/38, C07K 14/00,
G01N 33/571, G01N 33/53,
C12Q 1/68, A61K 38/55

(54) Use of a herpes protease

Verwendung einer Herpesprotease

Utilisation d'une protéase d'herpès

(84) Designated Contracting States:
AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IT LI LU MC NL
PT SE

(30) Priority: 24.05.1991 US 705814
07.02.1992 US 832855

(43) Date of publication of application:
25.11.1992 Bulletin 1992/48

(73) Proprietor:
ARCH DEVELOPMENT CORPORATION
Chicago, Illinois 60637 (US)

(72) Inventors:
• Roizman, Bernard
Chicago, Illinois (US)
• Liu, Fenyong
Chicago, Illinois (US)

(74) Representative:
Brown, John David et al
FORRESTER & BOEHMERT
Franz-Joseph-Strasse 38
80801 München (DE)

(56) References cited:
DE-A- 3 800 233

- JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY vol. 65, no. 1, January 1991, BALTIMORE, US pages 206 - 212 F. LIU ET AL. 'The promoter, transcriptional unit, and coding sequence of herpes simplex virus 1 family 35 proteins are contained within and in frame with the UI26 open reading frame'
- JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY vol. 65, no. 1, January 1991, BALTIMORE, US pages 206 - 212 F. LIU ET AL. 'The promoter, transcriptional unit, and coding sequence of herpes simplex virus 1 family 35 proteins are contained within and in frame with the UI26 open reading frame'
- JOURNAL OF CELLULAR BIOCHEMISTRY SUPPLEMENT, PART G vol. O, no. 15, 1991, US page 138 A.R. WELCH ET AL. 'Proteolytic processing of the cytomegalovirus assembly protein: Is a viral gene responsible?'
- JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY vol. 65, no. 10, October 1991, BALTIMORE, US pages 5149 - 5156 F. LIU ET AL. 'The herpes simplex virus 1 gene encoding a protease also contains within its coding domain the gene encoding the more abundant substrate'
- PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES OF USA. vol. 88, no. 23, December 1991, WASHINGTON US pages 10792 - 10796 A.R. WELCH ET AL. 'A herpesvirus maturational proteinase, assemblin: identification of its gene, putative active site domain, and cleavage site'

Note: Within nine months from the publication of the mention of the grant of the European patent, any person may give notice to the European Patent Office of opposition to the European patent granted. Notice of opposition shall be filed in a written reasoned statement. It shall not be deemed to have been filed until the opposition fee has been paid. (Art. 99(1) European Patent Convention).

EP 0 514 830 B1

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY vol. 49, no. 3, March 1984, BALTIMORE, US pages 947 - 959 L.E. HOLLAND ET AL. 'Transcriptional and genetic analyses of the herpes simplex virus type 1 genome: coordinates 0.29 to 0.45'• JOURNAL OF GENERAL VIROLOGY vol. 71, no. 4, 1990, READING, BERKS, GB pages 841 - 850 A.M. GRIFFIN ET AL. 'Analysis of the nucleotide sequence of DNA from the region of the thymidine kinase gene of infectious laryngotracheitis virus; potential evolutionary relationships between the herpesvirus subfamilies' | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• JOURNAL OF GENERAL VIROLOGY vol. 69, 1988, READING, BERKS, GB pages 1531 - 1574 D.J. MCGEOCH ET AL. 'The complete DNA sequence of the long unique region in the genome of herpes simplex virus type 1'• BIOSIS PREVIEWS, BIOSIS, PHILADELPHIA, PA, US. ABSTRACT NO. 89067899 L. BJORCK ET AL. 'Cystatin C a human proteinase inhibitor blocks replication of herpes simplex virus' |
|---|---|
-

Description

[0001] The present invention relates to the use of the U_L26 open reading frame gene product of Herpes Simplex Virus 1 as a protease. The present invention also relates to methods of determining the ability of a candidate substance to modify the action of said protease and the use of inhibitors of the protease encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a herpes infection.

Viral Infections Pose Major Health Problems

[0002] Treatment and prevention of viral infections is a major medical goal. To understand the state of the art in developing methods of treating and preventing viral infections, it is important to understand the structure and function of infectious virus. A virus is a small genetic element that contains either single or double-stranded DNA or RNA and can alternate between two distinct states: intracellular and extracellular. A virus is an obligatory intra-cellular parasite that cannot reproduce by itself. In effect, the virus takes over the biosynthetic machinery of the host cell and uses it for viral synthesis. Some of the protein products of the viral DNA are special enzymes or inhibitory factors that stop host cell metabolism, but most viral-encoded proteins are used in the construction of new virions. Protein synthesis is directed by the virus to produce necessary components for its replication and packaging, e.g. the *capsid*. These components must be assembled in an order depending on the virus, and new particles must escape from the cell if they are to infect other cells.

[0003] The general steps of the intracellular viral replication (lytic cycle) are:

1. attachment of the virus to a host cell (absorption);
2. penetration of the virus or its nucleic acid into the host cell;
3. replication of the viral nucleic acid;
4. production of viral proteins and other essential components;
5. assembly of viral nucleic acid and protein components; and
6. release of mature virion particles from the host cell.

[0004] The overall result of the lytic cycle is new virus particles and dead host cells because the virus has appropriated the vital forces of the host. In certain types of infection, such as that caused by herpes, there may be a latent period wherein the virus resides in the host cell.

[0005] Elucidation of viral genetic systems opens the door to investigations on the mechanisms of viral infection and replication which are not simply of academic interest, but are directed toward detection, prevention, and treatment of viral caused diseases. Host resistance to viral infection may occur through absence of a viral-receptor site to prevent attachment of the virus to the host cell; destruction of the viral nucleic acids after they are injected into the host cell, for example, by cleavage of viral nucleic acids by host enzymes; inhibition of essential viral protein synthesis; or destruction of viral proteins after their formation in the host cell.

[0006] Development of antiviral drugs to supplement natural resistance is a major commercial objective whose goal is to counteract the devastating effects of many viral infections on humans. Unfortunately, treatments available to date are inadequate for most types of virus. For example, interferons are cellular antiviral substances, low molecular weight proteins, that prevent viral multiplication. However, interferons tend to be host specific, not viral specific, and have no effect on host cells already infected. Also, they can be toxic at high concentrations.

[0007] The target of antiviral drugs may be enzymes uniquely specified by the virus. For example, a major target for attack on HIV infections which cause AIDS, is the enzyme reverse transcriptase. Inhibiting this enzyme effects blockage of viral replication. Unfortunately, resistance develops to these drugs, e.g. to AZT, and is a major limitation of such treatment. The anti-herpes simplex virus drugs currently on the market are directed against enzymes which synthesize viral DNA (e.g. acyclovir). Because of emergence of resistance to these drugs, there is considerable interest in new targets.

[0008] Production of viral proteins is of particular interest as a stage where the virus may be attacked. In the extra-cellular or infectious state, the basic structure of viruses consists of a nucleic acid core surrounded by proteins (*nucleocapsid*). Some viruses also have an *envelope* that is external to the nucleocapsid, and contains lipids and protein. The protein coat is called the *capsid*. Many different proteins may constitute the *capsid*, depending on the virus. Some viruses encode 3-10 proteins, others more than 200. Virus particles are called *virions*; their role is to protect the viral nucleic acid when transferred from the cell in which it replicated to a new host cell. After transfer to the host cells,

the viral intracellular state begins, and replication of the virus is potentiated. A number of non-herpes viruses appear to express proteases with cleavage site specificity which are potential targets for therapeutic intervention. However, no such protease has previously been identified for the herpes virus, a particularly widespread infectious agent for which treatment and prevention methods are grossly inadequate.

The Herpes Family

[0009] The family of herpes virus includes animal viruses of great clinical interest because they are the causative agents of many diseases. Epstein-Barr virus has been implicated in cancer initiation; cytomegalovirus is the greatest infectious threat to AIDS patients; and Varicella Zoster Virus, is of great concern in certain parts of the world where chicken pox and shingles are serious health problems. A worldwide increase in the incidence of sexually transmitted herpes simplex (HSV) infection has occurred in the past decade, accompanied by an increase in neonatal herpes. Contact with active ulcerative lesions or asymptotically excreting patients can result in transmission of the infective agent. Transmission is by exposure to virus at mucosal surfaces and abraded skin, which permit the entry of virus and the initiation of viral replication in cells of the epidermis and dermis. In addition to clinically apparent lesions, latent infections may persist, in particular in nerve cells. Various stimuli may cause reactivation of the HSV infection. Consequently, this is a difficult infection to eradicate. This scourge has largely gone unchecked due to the inadequacies of treatment modalities.

Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV)

[0010] Herpes simplex viruses subtypes 1 and 2 (HSV-1, HSV-2), are herpes viruses that are among the most common infectious agents encountered by humans (Corey and Spear, 1986; Whitley, 1990). These viruses cause a broad spectrum of diseases which range from relatively insignificant and nuisance infections such as recurrent herpes simplex labialis, to severe and life-threatening diseases such as herpes simplex encephalitis (HSE) of older children and adults, or the disseminated infections of neonates. Clinical outcome of herpes infections is dependent upon early diagnosis and prompt initiation of antiviral therapy. However, despite some successful therapy, dermal and epidermal lesions recur, and HSV infections of neonates and infections of the brain are associated with high morbidity and mortality. Earlier diagnosis than is currently possible would improve therapeutic success. In addition, improved treatments are desperately needed.

[0011] Extrinsic assistance has been provided to infected cells, in particular, in the form of chemicals. For example, chemical inhibition of herpes viral replication has been effected by a variety of nucleoside analogues such as 5-fluorodeoxyuridine (FUDR), 5-iododeoxyuridine, 5-iododeoxyuridine, thymine arabinoside, and the like.

[0012] Some protection has been provided in experimental animal models by polyspecific or monospecific anti-HSV antibodies, HSV-primed lymphocytes, and cloned T cells to specific viral antigens (Corey and Spear, 1986). However, no satisfactory treatment has been found.

[0013] Proteases have not been identified in the herpes viruses, but there is some knowledge of the biology of the herpes virus family. Herpes viruses are double stranded DNA viruses that replicate in host cell nuclei. The herpes *virion* is constituted from over 30 different proteins which are assembled within the host cell. About 6-8 are used in the capsid. The preferred host cells for herpes viruses are vertebrate cells.

[0014] The herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1) genome specifies an abundant *capsid* protein complex which in denaturing gels forms multiple bands due to different molecular weights of the component proteins. Some preliminary identification of these proteins has been reported. A set of herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1) capsid proteins was reported by Gibson and Roizman (1972, 1974). A genetically and immunologically related family of viral *capsid* proteins identified by their migration bands in denaturing gels has been designated infected-cell proteins 35(ICP35). (Braun et al., 1983, 1984) At least four major and a number of minor bands in one-dimensional denaturing polyacrylamide gels, and numerous spots in two-dimensional gels, have been reported.

[0015] Braun et al. (1984) using a panel of monoclonal antibodies exemplified by H745 reported that ICP35 proteins are processed post-translationally into at least 6 species (ICP35a,b,c,d,e,f) differing in electrophoretic mobility on SDS polyacrylamide gels. Although characterized by different molecular weights, this group of virus polypeptides are detected by the same monoclonal antibodies and are coded by a region in the HSV-1 genome. Empty capsids do not contain these polypeptides. A set of proteins possibly analogous to ICP35 was reported by Preston et al. (1983).

[0016] Nucleotide sequencing has been performed on the HSV-1 genome, and attempts, generally unsuccessful, have been made to correlate various capsid proteins to sequences of the genome. For example, it has been proposed that the ICP35 proteins are encoded by the open reading frame designated U_L26 (McGeoch, et al., 1988). In the present invention it is shown that this prediction was incorrect or at least incomplete. Crude mapping of the region encoding ICP35 was attempted by Braun et al. (1984) on the basis of the analysis of HSV-1 x HSV-2 intertypic recombinants. These authors proposed that ICP35 is encoded by a region located between the genes specifying thymidine

kinase (U_L23) and glycoprotein B (U_L27). This is not a very specific prediction because it covers an area now known to include four genes.

[0017] The present invention resulted from a successful search for a new virus target for therapy. The search began by choice of the HSV-1 ICP35 protein family as a substrate. A protease target for antiviral chemotherapy, in particular, as applied to herpes virus infections, was identified in this fashion. Methods of preparing and detecting the protease, methods for selecting inhibitors of the protease, as well as detection and treatment protocols based on inhibiting the protease, are also disclosed. The finding of similarity between the gene for the herpes protease in HSV-1 and that in human cytomegalovirus indicates that the disclosure is broad applicable to all herpesvirus, including HSV, CMV, EBV and VZV.

[0018] There is disclosed the identification, purification and manipulation of viral proteases for the development of methodology and compositions for the treatment and prevention of viral infections. The disclosed proteases may be further defined as serine proteases with the properties expected of this category of protease. A *serine protease* is an enzyme which catalyzes the hydrolysis of peptide bonds, and typically have a serine residue at the active site. (White, Handler and Smith, 1973). Serine proteases also typically include an arrangement of a triad of catalytic residues, that are somewhat removed from one another in the linear arrangement of amino acids, but brought together as a "proteolytic cleft" in the properly folded protease. Various difference have been observed in this catalytic triad from protease to protease. For example, in both trypsin and subtilisin serine proteases, Asp, His, and Ser are the amino acids of the catalytic triad. However, in trypsin-like serine proteases, they are arranged His, Asp, Ser, whereas subtilisin-like proteases are arranged Asp, His, Ser. There are also differences in the relative spacing of these key residues. In addition, there are other evolutionarily conserved features of these proteases which allow them to be identified as serine proteases and subsequently classified. The presence of the catalytically important Asp, His, and Ser residues are the crucial tests, however, for membership and classification in the serine proteases.

[0019] The proteases appear to be essential for development of the capsid of the virus. Consequently, inhibiting the protease action will lead to disruption of the lytic cycle of the virus. Obviously, such proteases are optimal targets for antiviral therapy. In particular, the target is useful for attacks on the herpes virus for which no protease has heretofore been reported. The present disclosure relates more particularly to the identification, purification, and manipulation of herpes serine proteases, and to the use of inhibitors of the proteases to detect and treat herpes infections.

[0020] In an illustrative embodiment, a protease has been purified from HSV-1, a subtype of the herpes simplex virus. The apparent molecular weight of this protease as determined by SDS-polyacrylamide PAGE gel electrophoresis is approximately 75-85kd, generally about 80kd. The herpes protease is further characterized as having an amino acid sequence of approximately 450-635 amino acids. However, these ranges are flexible. For example, the 635 amino acid sequence may have at least 329 amino acids removed from its carboxyl end and still maintain its serine protease activity. In the 635 amino acid embodiment the protease cleavage site is located at a position about 18 - 25 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus, preferably about 20 amino acid from the carboxyl terminus. The proteases are obtained either from cells injected with HSV-1 and 2, cells transfected with a DNA sequence encoding the protease, or in purified form by being synthesized *in vitro* or in cell free systems, using a reticulocyte lysate, for example, from a rabbit. After synthesis of the protein, the protein will migrate as a single band on a denaturing gel and is readily detected with ³⁵S labelled methionine. After about 5 hours of protein synthesis, two bands will result. As demonstrated in subsequent sections, the second band is a self-cleavage product of the first.

[0021] Characteristics of this protease include: (i) it contains four domains, several of which are not required for its catalytic activity and (ii) the active site is near the amino terminus of the protease. Mutations involving amino acid substitutions, deletions, insertion of stop codons or of 20 amino acid stretches into the protease have delineated the dispensable domains No. I and No. IV at the amino and carboxyl domains of the gene. The essential carboxyl-proximal domain of No. III can be separated from the essential amino proximal domain of No. II by at least 20 amino acids and the protease will remain functional.

[0022] The amino proximal domain is the most conserved region among Varicella-zoster virus and human cytomegalovirus homologues of U_L26. Of the conserved aspartic acid, histidine, or serine amino acid codons tested in this domain, only the histidine residues 61 and 148 could not be replaced without impairment of the proteolytic activity of the protease. Three dimensional crystal structure analyses may provide further insight into the structure of the active sites (Skalka, 1989).

[0023] The present disclosure also relates to nucleic acid segments which are capable of coding for the herpes proteases described herein. In an illustrative embodiment, extensive manipulation of nucleic acid sequences within the HSV-1 genome has revealed the secrets of viral mechanisms and allowed isolation and purification of useful nucleic acid segments and their expression products. Examples of such manipulation include incorporation of selected segments of the nucleic acid sequence with appropriate promoters and tracers into plasmids to determine the actions and interactions of the genetic regions, their expression products, and mechanisms of control over their expression.

[0024] Also disclosed is the coding domain in the nucleic acid segment for the family of herpes simplex virus 1 capsid proteins designated ICP35. This newly defined coding region has been designated U_L26.5. In an illustrative embod-

iment of the coding sequence for ICP35 proteins, the segment has been demarcated by the restriction endonuclease cleavage sites *Hpa-I* and *Pst-I*. These two cleavage sites are located at map positions +832 and +2761. These map locations are defined as distances from the transcription initiation site of the U_L26 open reading frame in the HSV-1 genome. This position has been designated +1. The gene coding for the ICP35 proteins also comprises those sequences that are downstream from the *KpnI* site which is at map position +2104, and continue all the way to a poly A site at position +2138.

[0025] The nucleic acid segments in the present disclosure are further defined as having overlapping open reading frames for the protease and the ICP35 proteins (FIG. 2). These overlapping segments are "3'co-terminal." The first segment, the longer of the two, codes for a first protein. This first protein has a molecular weight of approximately 75-85kd.

The second open reading frame, the smaller of the two overlapping open reading frame sequences encodes a second protein that has an apparent approximate molecular weight of 40-55kd as determined by SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, preferably 45kd. The first protein is defined to encode a proteolytic module which is capable of cleaving an amino acid sequence in accordance with serine protease action. The substrate capable of being cleaved may be either the protease sequence itself that is encoded by the U_L26 gene, or the ICP35 precursor proteins, which have previously been designated ICD35 c, d based on migration in one and two dimensional gels. Insertion of a 20 amino acid epitope does not preclude cleavage.

[0026] A nucleic acid segment, either DNA or RNA, coding for the second protein includes approximately 990 base pairs in an HSV-1 embodiment. In certain applications, the segment encoded need include only the sequences which upon cleavage will yield ICP35 e and f. In other applications, only the cleavage site *per se* may be desired to be encoded, for example in the candidate inhibitor assay described subsequently. In an exemplary embodiment, the nucleic acid segment includes those segments essentially as set forth in FIG. 1A, line 5, of the present specification, or its functional equivalent.

[0027] As used herein, *functional equivalents* are intended to refer to those enzymes, and their encoding nucleic acid sequences, in which certain structural changes have been made but which nonetheless are, or encode, catalytically active proteases capable of cleaving ICP35. It is generally known in the art that modifications and/or changes may be made in the structure of proteins and still obtain a molecule having like or otherwise desirable characteristics. Thus, certain amino acids may be substituted for other amino acids in a protein structure without appreciable loss of interactive binding capacity with, for example, substrate molecules or specific antibodies. Since it is the interactive capacity and nature of a protein that defines that protein's biological functional activity, certain amino acid sequence substitutions can be made in a protein sequence (or, of course, its underlying DNA coding sequence) and nevertheless obtain a protein with like properties. It is thus contemplated by the inventors that various changes may be made in the herpes protease DNA or protein sequences without appreciable loss of their biological utility or activity.

[0028] In making such changes, the hydropathic index of amino acids may be considered. The importance of the hydropathic amino acid index, i.e. hydrophobicity and charge characteristics, in conferring interactive biologic function on a protein is generally understood in the art (Kyte et al., 1982). For example, it is known that certain amino acids may be substituted for other amino acids having a comparable hydropathic index or score, e.g. generally +/- 1, and still retain a similar biological activity. The relative hydropathic character of the amino acid is believed to determine the secondary structure of the resultant protein, which in turn defines the interaction of the protein with substrate molecules. Thus, for example, it is proposed the isoleucine, which has a hydropathic index of +4.5, can be substituted for valine (+4.2) or leucine (+3.8), and still obtain a protein having similar biologic activity. Alternatively, at the other end of the scale, it is proposed that lysine (-3.9) can be substituted for arginine (-4.5), and so on.

[0029] Amino acid substitutions are generally therefore based on the relative similarity of the side-chain substituents, for example, size, electrophilic character, charge, and the like. Exemplary substitutions which take various of the foregoing characteristics into consideration are well known to those of skill in the art and include, for example: alanine, glycine and serine; arginine and lysine; glutamate and aspartate; serine and threonine; and valine, leucine and isoleucine.

[0030] Nucleic acid sequences of the present disclosure are also useful as hybridization probes, which will in turn have a number of applications. Hybridization probes may be employed, e.g., to select mutant gene clones from libraries, in the preparation of antisense molecules (e.g., stabilized antisense RNA molecules), as PCR primers and probes, to name just a few of many applications that involve hybridization as applied to (or in addition to) protein encoding capability. Of course, useful hybridization probes may be prepared in virtually any length, depending on the intended application and hybridization conditions. For example, probes as small as 10 to 14 nucleotides in length can nevertheless be expected to form a stable hybrid with a template molecule, so long as the hybridization conditions are appropriate for the degree of sequence homology between the probe and the template. Similarly, molecules ranging in length up to that sufficient to encode a gene, or even multiple genes, may be employed as hybridization probes.

[0031] In any event, in preferred embodiments nucleic acid molecules useful as hybridization probes or primers, may range in size from, e.g., 10-14 to 20, 30, 40 or 50 or so nucleotides, up to 100, 200, 500 or even 1000 or 2000 nucleotides in length, depending on the intended application and hybridization conditions.

[0032] Thus, nucleic acid segments may include a sequence either smaller or larger than those illustrated in FIG. 1, for example, it may correspond to an approximately 14 nucleotide base pair long region which is capable of hybridizing to the nucleic acid segments of FIG. 1 under stringent conditions. Small segments such as this may be used as probes to detect the presence of the protease coding region.

5 [0033] A nucleic acid segment may also be a mRNA sequence for the protease or the ICP35 proteins. The mRNA for the latter is transcribed at approximate nucleotide position +1000 (a designated distance from the herpes U_L26 transcription initiation site which is designated +1) to position +2138. An mRNA is translated from the methionine initiation codon which is located at +1099. Smaller or larger segments are also contemplated depending on the use to which the segment is employed. These mRNA segments are useful to synthesize the ICP35 cleavage site.

10 [0034] Various nucleic acid segments within the herpes genome have been isolated and cloned. A nucleic acid segment coding for a herpes protease may be obtained from the herpes genome from a region corresponding to map locations of the U_L26 herpes open reading frame. A smaller segment contained within the protease coding segment lies between the thymidine kinase gene and glycoprotein gB gene and includes a DNA sequence from position +832 to +2138. This coding sequence not only may be expressed as the ICP35 herpes capsid family proteins, but includes a promoter sequence for regulating the ICP35 coding sequence.

15 [0035] The ICP35 promoter has been isolated and shown to be an extremely active promoter, as is evidenced by the observation that increased numbers of copies of the substrate are produced by the ICP35 encoding unit compared to the production of the protease from the longer U_L26 open reading frame. It includes between 135 and 168 base pairs and maps between position +832 and +1000 in the first open reading frame of U_L26. This promoter region is capable of initiating expression of the ICP35 proteins. It is also useful in driving expression at an increased rate of other nucleic acid sequences, for example herpes simplex genes U_S5 and U_L10.

20 [0036] Isolation and manipulation of the coding sequence for the ICP35 proteins was an important achievement because these proteins are used in construction of the herpes virus capsid. To become functional members of the capsid, the ICP35 protein precursor ICP35 c, d must be cleaved by the herpes protease produced by the U_L26 coding sequence, to yield e and f. This protease is capable of effecting cleavage of the precursor proteins even when both genes encoding for the protease and the precursor are in a trans position.

25 [0037] The nucleic acid segments that carry coding sequences may be carried in a recombinant expression vector capable of expressing encoded virus serine proteases. Examples of such nucleic acid segments are those shown for the herpes virus, HSV-1 in FIG. 1A designated as A-Z, AA-NN of the present specification. These nucleic acid segments or their functional equivalents may be operably linked, optionally, to selected promoter and/or control elements, as well as to other elements such as a termination site, a poly-A addition site and to other elements, as appropriate (see, e.g., plasmids A-Z, AA-NN). These components may include promoters such as those capable of controlling the herpes α 4, the ICP35 genes or virtually any other promoter capable of driving expression in the selective host cell. The recombinant expression vectors may comprise as a promoter either a eukaryotic or prokaryotic promoter, and may include a polyadenylation signal at position 3' of the carboxyl terminal amino acid. The promoter may be within a transcriptional unit of the encoded protein. Vectors may also include markers which have been used for the analysis presented herein. Examples of host cells are BHK cells, Vero, *E. coli* or other eukaryotic or prokaryotic cells known to those of skill in the art to permit expression of transferred vectors according to the present invention.

35 [0038] There are further disclosed methods of preparing a herpes protease. An embodiment of such methods includes the following steps:

(1) Preparing a nucleic acid segment which encodes the herpes protease; and

(2) Allowing the segment to be expressed in order to produce the protein.

45 [0039] In an illustrative embodiment the method of preparing a protease includes use of a host cell into which the nucleic acid segment has been transferred. The host cell is cultured under conditions suitable for expression and the protein is thereby expressed. The method may also include a step wherein the protein is isolated and purified by methods well known to those skilled in the art. The degree of purification required will depend on the application for which the protein is intended. Alternatively, the nucleic acid segment may be expressed in a cell free system, such as a rabbit reticulocyte lysate, or synthesized by an automated protein synthesizer as referenced herein.

50 [0040] A nucleic acid segment which codes for the herpes protease or for the ICP35 proteins may be prepared by obtaining viral genomic DNA from cells which are infected with herpes, amplifying the proteolytic site containing nucleic acid sequence region within the nucleic acid of interest, and preparing recombinant clones which include such amplified nucleic acid sequences. The clones may be then selected to contain the desired amplified nucleic acid segments by employing monoclonal antibodies directed to at least the region coding for the proteolytic domain of the protease or the cleavage site of the ICP35 protein to screen such clones. Other cloning and clone screening techniques well known to those of skill in the art are also suitable (Sambrook et al., 1989).

[0041] There is also disclosed a method for cleaving a herpes molecule which includes the steps of treating the molecule with the protease under conditions effective for cleavage. Such conditions are those in which serine proteases generally operate.

[0042] In an exemplary embodiment, methods for detecting the herpes protease in tissue samples consist of preparing antibodies directed against the protease, labelling these antibodies, contacting tissue samples with the labelled antibody, and detecting the labelled antibody protein heteroconjugate by standard techniques well known to those of skill in the art. These labels may be fluorescent labels or radioactive labels.

[0043] One of the methods for detecting the nucleic acid segments in biological samples is to prepare a nucleotide probe that is capable of hybridizing to a nucleic acid segment substantially as set forth in FIG. 1, either line 5 or 6, or as disclosed in other areas of the specification herein as coding for a herpes protease or the ICP35 proteins. The nucleotide probe may be labelled. The probe is then incubated with the biological sample to be tested, under selective conditions appropriate for the formation of specific hybrids. The specific hybrids formed between the probes and the nucleic acids of the biological sample are then detected by a variety of methods well known by those skilled in the art, for example, by detecting a radioactive label on the probe. The formation of such hybrids is indicative of the presence of the nucleic acid segment that was sought initially.

[0044] A method for treatment of viral infections makes use of the target proteases disclosed herein which are vital to the viral life cycle. An example of such a method comprises preparing an effective amount of an inhibitor of the protease. The amount will depend on the route of treatment. The route may be topical creams, ointments or sprays applied directly to the skin, or intravenous injection for systemic infections. The inhibitor is contemplated to be combined with a pharmacologically acceptable carrier which would be appropriate for use in humans depending on the route of application. Finally a therapeutic amount of the inhibitor is determined such that the herpes virus itself is inhibited from reproducing, but the host cells are not destroyed. The method of treatment disclosed herein is particularly applicable to the herpes virus simplex subtypes 1 or 2, but will be generally applicable to the herpes family, members of which are known to have extensive DNA homologies. Because of extensive sequence homologies to HSV-1 U_L26 in other organisms, e.g. cytomegalovirus (U_L80), Varicella-zoster virus (ORF33), Epstein-Barr virus, these treatment strategies are likely to be broadly applicable to all herpesvirus.

[0045] This inhibition may be either at the level of transcription, translation, or protein action. Interference with transcription would necessitate interfering with mRNA formation on a DNA template. Interference with translation would necessitate interfering with the synthesis of proteins on the mRNA template. Alternatively, the action of the protease may itself be disrupted either by destroying the structure of the protease, in particular its proteolytic domain, altering the cleavage site of its substrate, or by providing a false substrate which inactivates the protease. Another form of inhibitor comprises a nucleic acid segment which is capable of hybridizing with the coding sequence of a herpes protease, but forms a hybrid which inhibits transcription of the mRNA from which the protease would be translated.

[0046] There are several inhibitors that appear to be suitable for purposes of this invention. It has been found that chymostatin and diisopropyl fluorophosphate provide 100% inhibition of the protease in an *in vitro* assay. Phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride provides at least 50% inhibition, this reduction is due to the instability of the inhibitor over time. The results of studies with a variety of protease inhibitors showed that the U_L26 protease was inhibited by serine protease inhibitors but not by cysteine, aspartic acid or metalloprotease inhibitors. Other contemplated inhibitors include antipain, aprotinin, leupeptin, (4-amino-phenyl)-methane sulfonyl fluoride, and any other serine protease inhibitors that tests positive in the candidate screening assay described herein. In particular embodiments, non-toxic derivatives of the inhibitors disclosed herein are contemplated.

[0047] In order to determine still other inhibitors the candidate substances of interest are screened by preparing a virus protease, combining the protease with the candidate inhibitor substance, and selecting a substrate capable of being cleaved by the protease. The assay is conducted by contacting the substrate with the protease-candidate substance combination, and determining whether the candidate substance has inhibited the action of the protease on the substrate. In an illustrative embodiment, the virus protease used to test for a candidate substance is the purified herpes protease synthesized *in vitro* in a rabbit reticulocyte lysate by methods disclosed in the present specification.

[0048] The protease is combined with the candidate inhibitor substance either in a laboratory *in vitro* assay or in a test organism. The substrate selected which is capable of being cleaved by the protease, may be the protease itself, or at least the cleavage site of the ICP35 protein precursor c, d. After contacting the substrate with a protease and the candidate inhibitor substance it can be determined whether the substance has inhibited the action of the protease on the substrate by determining whether cleavage of the substrate has taken place. In one embodiment this may be determined by seeing if the ICP35 c, d proteins have produced ICP35 subunits e and f as determined by SDS gel electrophoresis, which are only formed by cleavage of c, d by the protease. If the proteins have not been cleaved, the inference is that the candidate substance indeed inhibits the virus protease. This inhibitor may then be used in therapeutic trials.

[0049] The virus protease used in the candidate inhibitor substance assay may be prepared through the application of genetic recombinant technology, wherein, for example, an expression vector includes at least the proteolytic module of the protease. The expression vector is then transferred into an appropriate host cell under conditions which permit

expression of the coding sequence. After the sequence has been expressed in the form of a protease or protease segment, the protease may be collected from the cell and further purified if required, by methods well known to those of skill in the art.

[0050] An alternative method of preparing the herpes protease is to obtain a sample which contains the protease, for example a herpes infected tissue segment or exudate. The sample is then homogenized and fractionated to obtain a protease fraction. The protease fraction may be then further isolated and purified by methods known to those of skill in the art depending upon the particular application.

[0051] There is also disclosed a method for selecting a serine protease with functions equivalent to those disclosed herein in different species of herpes, other non-herpes virus or, indeed, any organism. To select the protease, an amino acid sequence comprising at least the cleavage site of the protease disclosed in the present specification is prepared. The candidate viral protease is then contacted with the cleavage site containing the amino acid sequence which is susceptible to cleavage by a viral serine protease. Finally a determination is made whether cleavage has occurred by using the ICP35 substrate and determining whether ICP35 c, d has been altered to e and f. By these methods, it has been shown that the HSV-2 protease is capable of cleaving ICP35 c, d to e and f.

[0052] The methods and compositions disclosed have made it possible to identify essential serine proteases in other species. The methods of the present invention are generally applicable, only the source genome will change. It is expected that these serine proteases are encoded by conservative segments and are widespread. For the herpes viruses, four of the six viral DNA sequences (HSV-1, EBV, VZV, CMV) are reported and have been entered into a computer data base available to those of skill in the art. Homologies in amino acid sequences and function are expected based on the conservative nature of serine proteases, and homologies detected previously among related species, e.g. the herpes family. (Davison et al., 1986; McGeoch et al., 1988) Thus, it is predictable that UL26 of HSV-1, BVRF2 of EBV, UL80 of CMV, Gene 33 of VZV play the same or similar role in the maturation of capsid and encode a protease. Because extensive sequence homology was found between these presumptive proteases and HSV-1 UL26, it is believed that the action or cleavage mechanism of these protease is the same as the HSV-1 UL26. Thus, it is not surprising that the present invention including inhibitor described have against herpes simplex virus (HSV-1 and HSV-2) and can be applicable to the treatment of other herpes viruses (EBV, VZV, CMV and human herpes virus 6).

[0053] As an indication that the disclosed serine proteases will not be confined to the herpes family, there are reports of capsid assembly in other microbes. Bacteriophage T₄ and lambda are most commonly studied for capsid assembly. In these phages, first a preformed capsid is assembled by interaction of outer coat protein and inner scaffolding protein. Then, the scaffolding protein is cleaved by a phage-encoded protease and removed from the capsid. At the same time, the phage DNA is packaged into the capsid to give rise to mature capsid. The cleavage of scaffolding protein is essential to produce mature capsid. Recently, cryo-electromicroscopy studies revealed the similarity of the capsid structure between HSV and lambda phage. The sequence of human CMV strain AD169 has been determined, and a gene analogous to HSV UL26 has been identified. ICP35 has been proposed to function as a scaffolding or assembly protein in the process of HSV capsid maturation. The cleavage of ICP35 by the proteases of the present invention is required for the capsid maturation and is essential for the replication of the virus. The proteases disclosed herein function as a counterpart to those of phages which cleave the ICP 35 protein to initiate DNA packaging. Therefore, the candidate protease inhibitor assays and methods of treatment disclosed herein have wide applicability than to only the herpes family.

[0054] A *domain* refers to a portion or region of a protein defined as an amino acid sequence within a polypeptide or protein, in the present case a domain is defined functionally by the effect of amino acid deletions or substitutions in a sequence on the function or substitution of the protein.

[0055] *Downstream* refers to nucleic acid sequences found in a 3' direction from a given point of reference along a nucleic acid molecule.

[0056] An *epitope* is an amino acid sequence which is an antigenic determinant.

[0057] An *open reading frame* (ORF) contains a series of triplets coding for amino acids without any termination codons. Sequences of this type are potentially translatable into a protein.

[0058] *Substantially purified* in reference to DNA refers to DNA segments isolated free of their natural state as they may be present in the genome of an organism, and is intended to include segments as they would exist upon genetic engineering, e.g. by insertion into a recombinant vector.

[0059] A *transcriptional unit* is the distance between sites of initiation and termination by RNA polymerase.

[0060] *Upstream* refers to nucleic acid sequences found in a 5' direction from a given point of reference along a nucleic acid molecule.

[0061] A *viral protease* is an enzyme capable of cleaving viral precursor proteins at a specific site.

HSV herpes simplex virus
CMV cytomegalovirus
ORF open reading frame

ICP infected cellular polypeptide
 DFP diisopropyl fluorophosphate
 TPCK L-1-tosylamido-2-phenylethyl chloromethyl ketone
 TLCK *N*- α -p-tosyl-L-lysine chloromethyl ketone
 5 PMSF phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride
 EGTA ethyleneglycol-bis (β -aminoethyl ether) N, N, N', N'tetraacetic acid.

FIG. 1A. Sequence arrangement of the HSV-1 genome, the positions of U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and their transcripts, and the structure of the test plasmids constructed for use in the present invention.

FIG. 1B. Nucleotide and amino acid sequence of the U_L26 open reading frame. The +1 site corresponds to the translational initiation site of U_L26 open reading frame.

FIG. 2. A schematic representation of the relationship among the HSV-1 genomic DNA, the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames (ORF), and the translational and post-translational products of this genetic system.

FIG. 3. Autoradiographic image of DNA probe 1 (A) and probe 2 (B) hybridized to total cytoplasmic RNA from mock-infected and 12-hr-infected Vero cells and digested with S1 nuclease.

FIG. 4. Photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, reacted with goat monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) against HSV-1 ICP35.

FIG. 5. Photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab).

FIG. 6. Photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab).

FIG. 7. Autoradiographic images and photograph of polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab).

FIG. 8. Autoradiographic image of the ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate and electrophoretically separated in a 9.5% denaturing polyacrylamide gel. FIG. 9. Photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C (34°) or at 39°C (39°), electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 to HSV-1 ICP35 (HSV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase.

FIG. 10. Photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmids and either mock-infected or superinfected with HSV-1(F) (HSV-1) either at 34°C, at 39°C, or at 37°C, electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase.

FIG. 11. Photograph of polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmids and either mock-infected or superinfected with HSV-1(F) (HSV-1) or HSV-2(G) (HSV-2) either at 34°C, at 39°C, or at 37°C, electrophoretically separated in denaturing polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV-Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled with peroxidase.

FIG. 12. Autoradiographic image of ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame electrophoretically separated in a denaturing polyacrylamide gel.

FIG. 13. Autoradiographic images and photograph of polypeptides either synthesized *in vitro* from sequences encoded in plasmids U or Y or contained in lysates of cells transfected with plasmids X or Z and superinfected with HSV-1(F) or HSV-1(G).

FIG. 14. Autoradiographic image of ^{35}S -methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame electrophoretically separated in a denaturing gel to show the action of PMSF as a protease inhibitor.

FIG. 15. Photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from lysates of cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C (34°) or at 39°C (39°), electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted first with monoclonal antibody H725 to HSV-1 ICP35 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 to the CMV epitope (CMV Ab), and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase.

FIG. 16. Autoradiographic images of the electrophoretically separated polypeptides translated *in vitro* in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate from the synthetic RNAs transcribed *in vitro* from the U_L26 ORF cloned in plasmid construct Y.

FIG. 17. Schematic representation of the results of mutagenesis studies.

[0062] There are disclosed herpes proteases and nucleic acid segments which encode such proteases. The protease encoding segments also contain at least one coding domain for proteins used in *capsid* production during viral replication. Substrates of the protease include its own amino acid sequence and the precursors of viral capsid proteins (FIG. 2). Inhibitors of the protease arrest the viral life cycle, thereby offering a means of therapeutic intervention. An illustrative embodiment of the methods and compositions of the present invention, employs HSV-1 as a protease source.

[0063] A novel herpes protease has been identified in HSV-1, purified and abbreviated as "Pr." A weapon forged to directly attack virus production is provided by inhibiting the action of the *Pr* protease. Because the protease is essential for packaging of DNA into the viral capsid, inhibition of the protease disrupts the replication cycle of the virus. Treatment with inhibitors of the protease alleviates clinical effects and reduces risk of transmission.

[0064] The herpes protease is a product of a region of the HSV genome, the U_L26 open reading frame. The protease is both a necessary and the sole viral protein that suffices to effect its own cleavage and that of the product of the U_L26.5 open reading frame (ORF) a region identified and purified as an aspect of the present invention. The product of the U_L26 ORF, a protein that has been designated as *Pra* is a previously undescribed herpes protease, the first protease ever purified from the herpes virus. In cell free systems, *Pra* cleaved itself to *Prb* providing evidence that the translation product *Pra*, can function as a protease. (FIG. 1) *Prb*, the designation assigned to the product of the autocatalytic cleavage of *Pra*, is approximately 20 amino acids smaller than *Pra*.

[0065] Characteristics of the disclosed protease are not only that it catalyzes its own cleavage, but surprisingly, a second substrate on which it acts, the more abundant substrate, is encoded by a sequence entirely contained within the gene encoding the protease. The protease and the second substrate share amino acid sequences at their carboxyl termini. A surprising and unexpected finding was that the coding segment for the second substrate codes for viral capsid proteins designated ICP35, and is a newly identified gene designated U_L26.5.

[0066] The expression of the U_L26 gene in the form of a protease is essential for viral maturation. The evidence for this statement is that a temperature-sensitive mutation reported by Preston, et al. (1983) at the U_L26 open reading frame has a lethal effect on capsid maturation. Therefore, disruption of the function of the protease interferes with viral maturation, presenting a therapeutic strategy.

[0067] Three general approaches were employed by the inventors to identify and characterize a herpes protease. These included: 1) transfecting cells with test plasmids and then infecting them with herpes; 2) transfecting cells with two plasmids; and 3) *in vitro* translation. Out of these studies, the inventors identified two overlapping herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1) nucleic acid sequences, which comprise two genes (independent transcription units). The larger of the sequences is designated U_L26 and encodes a protein of an apparent molecular weight of approximately 75-85kd as determined by SDS-PAGE. This protein is a serine protease which is capable of processing itself and the ICP35 protein precursors by carboxyl-terminal proteolytic cleavage. The smaller sequence is designated U_L26.5 and encodes a protein of an apparent molecular weight of approximately 35-50kd as determined by SDS-PAGE. Both genes have been cloned.

[0068] One of the reasons that disclosed proteases have been successfully isolated and purified, was because of the choice of a key test substrate, the ICP35 proteins. To better understand the herpes genome, another productive step was the construction of a large number of plasmids with a specific construction strategy designed to answer a specific question about the mechanism of herpes genetic pathways. Into some of the plasmids, a marker sequence was inserted to permit tracing of the paths of genetic action. The markers in a series of plasmid constructs included deletions or insertions of an $\alpha 4$ promoter or of a sequence encoding a cytomegalovirus epitope capable of reacting with a mouse monoclonal antibody. These constructs revealed dramatic and surprising differences in the genetic action of a region of the herpes genome from that predicted from previous work on the structure and action of the U_L26 ORF.

[0069] In previous work, McGeoch et al. (1988) predicted that the U_L26 frame encodes ICP35. The product of U_L26 predicted from the nucleotide sequences in that open reading frame, however, turned out to be considerably larger than ICP35. A hierarchical genetic complexity was revealed as responsible for production of the herpes capsid protein. What is disclosed in the present invention is a dissection of the domain designated U_L26 into two overlapping transcriptional units yielding proteins which share part of an amino acid sequence. What had previously been designated ICP35 turns out to be encoded only by a portion of the U_L26 open reading frame. For purposes of the present invention, that unit has been designated U_L26.5.

[0070] The protease has general applicability. Homologs of the substrate of the *Pra* protease, which cleaves a precursor to form the ICP35 proteins, have been detected in other herpes viruses. It is likely, therefore, that the methods of the present invention will reveal the protease in other members of the virus family, and in other species. As one example, it has been reported recently that the CMV equivalent of the ICP35 protein is cleaved at the carboxyl terminus (Gibson et al., 1990, Schenk et al. 1991), although the CMV protease had not been identified as yet in that species. The herpes-cleaved protease is, therefore, likely to affect cleavage in to other herpes viruses. More recently, there is a report of a proteinase in cytomegalovirus. An active protease is said to be released after cleavage of the full-length protease at amino acid 248, but the present invention suggests the result of such cleavage would be inactive.

[0071] The existence of a homologous open reading frame to ICP35 in the Varicella-Zoster Virus (VZV) genome (Davison and Scott, 1986; Davison and McGeoch, 1986) suggests that the ICP35 equivalent and the corresponding protease are conserved among the various herpes viruses. Because the amino acid sequence of ICP35 is entirely contained in the carboxyl terminus of *Pr* and because ICP35 does not show demonstrable proteolytic activity, it is expected that the proteolytic activity exhibited by *Pr* is expressed by the amino terminal domain of the protein. It is of interest to note that in the VZV genome (Davison and Scott, 1986), the open reading frame corresponding to U_L26 exhibits greater homology in amino acid sequence at the amino terminus rather than at the carboxyl terminus.

Manipulation of The Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV) Genome

[0072] The importance of a viral protease as a therapeutic target is clear from a consideration of viral replication mechanisms. For example, the herpes simplex virus has a genome comprising a linear, double-stranded DNA molecule (molecular weight approximately 100×10^6) large enough to encode 7^3 different gene products. The structure of the genome is unusual among DNA viruses in that two unique nucleotide sequences are flanked by inverted repeated sequences.

[0073] The viral genome is packaged within a regular icosahedral protein shell (capsid) composed of 162 capsomeres. The outer covering of the virus is a lipid containing membrane envelope derived from modified cell membrane. Cell proteins are not detected in the virion envelope. Glycoproteins in the lipid bilayer of the envelope mediate attachment of virus to the host cell, surface, and penetration of virus into the cell and viral maturation and egress. A tegument exists between the capsid and the lipid bilayer. Within the capsid are DNA polyamines, and DNA-binding proteins.

[0074] Clinical problems result when infection of cells is followed by replication and spread of the virus. After the viral genome reaches the nucleus of the cell, expression of viral genes occurs in a highly regulated fashion. Cell death may result from viral infection and replication. Protease inhibition will block replication. *In vivo* infections of certain cells, in particular sensory neurons, does not necessarily result in replication of virus and cell death. A latent phase may occur.

[0075] Sequence arrangement of HSV-1 genome, the positions of U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and their transcripts and the structure of the test plasmids constructed for aspects of the present invention are shown in FIG. 1:

Line 1, -schematic representation of the sequence arrangement of the HSV-1 genome. U_L and U_S refer to the long unique and short unique sequences flanked by terminal inverted repeats shown as rectangles.

Lines 2 and 3, -genome map position, nucleotide numbers relative to the approximate transcription initiation site of U_L26 indicated by letter I at +1, and restriction endonuclease sites of the HSV-1 EcoRI-PstI DNA fragment. Line 3 also shows the position of the translational termination codon(T) and of the single poly(A) signal (A) which serve both the U_L26 and U_L26.5 RNAs.

Lines 4 and 5, -the filled rectangles (thick bars) represent the coding domains of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames. The numbers refer to the positions of the transcription initiation site, the translation initiation and termination codons and of the poly(A) signal for both open reading frames related to nucleotide +1 of U_L26.

Line 6 is a restriction endonuclease map drawn to scale with reference to lines A through Z and AA through NN which are schematic representations of the HSV-1 sequences contained in the plasmid constructs used in the studies described in this report. The construction of the plasmids shown schematically in lines A through Z and AA

through NN are described in Example 1. The source of the $\alpha 4$ promotor (open rectangle) shown in plasmids B, D, H, J, K, L, M, P, W, X, Z, AA through NN, was BamHI Z DNA fragment (Post et al., 1981) inserted in proper transcriptional orientation. The CMV epitope is shown as a filled oval. The oligonucleotide C with its complement is shown as a filled rectangle, and the new created PmlI site is marked as P*. The restriction endonuclease sites were abbreviated as follows: B, BamHI; Ba, BstEII; Bs, BstEII; E, EcoNI; H, HpaI; K, KpnI; Ms, MstII; P, PmlI; Ps, PstI; S, SaI; X, XmaI. Me represents the methionine translation initiation codon of the U_L26.5 open reading frame.

[0076] In order to identify the *in vitro* translation of U_L26 and U_L26.5 the unprocessed species of ICP35, open reading frames, both the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames were cloned into PGEM3Z-f(+) to derive plasmids T and U, respectively (FIG. 1). RNAs corresponding to the mRNAs of U_L26 and U_L26.5 were transcribed by Sp6RNA polymerase and translated in nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysates. The results indicated that U_L26 and U_L26.5 specify proteins each of which form double bands with apparent molecular weights of 80kd (*Pra*) and 45kd (ICP35d, c), respectively. The two species of U_L26.5 (ICP35) protein synthesized *in vitro* were found to comigrate with ICP35c, d synthesized *in vitro* in HSV-1(F) infected cells. It was further found that the unprocessed forms of U_L26.5, that is ICP35c, and d, can be processed into ICP35e and f.

[0077] It was possible to map (localize) and purify the DNA sequences in the viral genome required for the processing of ICP35c, d into ICP35e, f. BHK cells were transfected with a series of plasmids containing different lengths of HSV-1 DNA sequences, each containing an intact ICP35 gene and superinfected with HSV-1(F) at 39°C. BHK cells transfected with the plasmid A containing the intact U_L26 gene (FIG. 1) generated ICP35e, f in addition to ICP35c, d whereas cells transfected with plasmid C in which the promoter region of U_L26 gene was deleted, and only the coding sequence of U_L26 was included (FIG. 1), generated only the unprocessed ICP35c, d. These results suggested that the gene product of U_L26 was required for the processing of ICP35, c, d into e, f.

[0078] The product of the gene U_L26 was found capable of cleaving ICP35c, d into e, f when present in the trans position. To determine whether U_L26 acts in *trans* or in *cis*, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid N as the substrate for processing and a series of plasmids containing deletions in the U_L26 open reading frame, and then infected with HSV-1(F) and maintained at 39°C. The results showed the following:

(i) ICP35c, d did not autocatalyze their own processing into ICP35e, f, inasmuch as the lysates of cells co-transfected with plasmids N and E (FIG. 1) did not contain ICP35 forms e and f reactive with the CMV monoclonal antibody.

(ii) ICP35c, d were not processed in BHK cells cotransfected with plasmids N and C or I. Plasmids C and I contain deletions in the promoter region and at the polyadenylation site of the U_L26 open reading frame, respectively (FIG. 1).

(iii) ICP35c, d were processed into e, f in BHK cells co-transfected with plasmids N and A or B. Plasmids A and B contain the intact U_L26 promoter and open reading frame and the U_L26 coding sequence driven by the $\alpha 4$ promoter, respectively. The α -transducing factor in HSV-1(F) induces the $\alpha 4$ promoter to a high level (Post et al., 1981; Battreson and Roizman, 1983) at 39°C. The high level of expression of U_L26 may explain the presence of the processed forms of ICP35 (forms e and f) in lysates of cells co-transfected with plasmids N and B.

[0079] The importance of the protease encoded by U_L26 is indicated by the results showing it to be competent for the processing of ICP35c, d into e, f. It is shown that U_L26 and processing of ICP35d, d to e, f are both essential for capsid production because a mutation in that region (in the 5' end of the U_L26 ORF) was reported as lethal (Preston, et al., 1983).

[0080] Even more exciting from the perspective of use of the protease as a target for attack on herpes infections is that the protease appears to be the sole protein required for processing of ICP35c, d into e, f proteins required for capsid production. That indicates the protease is essential for capsid formation. To determine whether U_L26 is the only viral protein required for this processing and to exclude the possibility that viral genes expressed by the HSV-1(F) genome at 39°C contribute to the catalysis of ICP35, BHK cells were co-transfected with a constant amount of plasmid L and different amounts of plasmid B as the genes encoding the substrate and the enzyme for the processing, respectively. In plasmid L (FIG. 1) the U_L26.5 open reading frame was regulated by the $\alpha 4$ promoter and the CMV epitope was inserted at the MstII restriction endonuclease site whereas plasmid B contained the intact U_L26 open reading frame driven by the same promoter. Because the $\alpha 4$ is a strong eukaryotic promoter constitutively expressed in transfected cells (Post et al., 1981; Kristie and Roizman, 1984), expression of the U_L26.5 and U_L26 proteins in cells transfected with plasmid L and B did not require superinfection with HSV-1(F). The results were as follows:

(i) In the absence of viral infection, ICP35c and d were the only two species expressed in cells transfected with plas-

mid L. The epitopically marked ICP35 expressed by plasmid L was fully processed in cells superinfected with HSV-1(F) at permissive temperature. As expected plasmid B did not produce products reactive with anti CMV antibody.

(ii) In the presence of plasmid B containing U_L26, the epitopically marked ICP35c, d expressed by plasmid L were processed into ICP35e, f. At low concentrations of plasmid B, the extent of accumulation of ICP35e, f was directly proportional to the amount of U_L26 plasmid DNA co-transfected with plasmid L into BHK cells. The decrease in the amounts of ICP35e, f observed in the presence of the highest amounts of plasmid B may reflect competition between the two plasmids or reduced yield as a result of the toxicity used by high amounts of DNA.

[0081] From results of these studies it was concluded that the product of the U_L26 is the only viral factor both competent and sufficient to process ICP35c, d into ICP35e, f. The protease is, therefore, essential for capsid development, which in turn is essential for the herpes virus replication life cycle.

[0082] The active agents of such medicants include an inhibitor of the protease. The inhibitor may act to countermand the proteolytic action of an already available protease, or to disrupt or prevent the initiation of the translation or transcription of the nucleic acid segments responsible for protease production. The inhibitor may be in the form of a chemical composition, in which case it must be combined with a composition which effects cell incorporation.

[0083] If the inhibitor is in the form of nucleic acid segment, it may be incorporated into infected cells by any of the variety of methods well known to those of skill in the art. Those methods are disclosed herein and comprise transfection of a recombinant vector, electroporation, or use of a "gene gun" to force mechanically accelerated nucleic acid particles into infected cells.

Example 1

Construction of Plasmids and Their Relation To The HSV Genome

[0084] A set of plasmids were constructed to contain segments of nucleic acid sequences that could be manipulated to identify sections of the nucleic acid sequence of the HSV genome which control production of specific polypeptides, and to isolate those segments and purify their products.

[0085] These ingenuous tools were created to identify and manipulate nucleic acid sequences involved in viral infections. In some plasmids, markers were inserted at specific locations in order to trace the products of cleavage, to define nucleotide sequences used for various infective processes. The CMV epitope is shown as a filled oval in FIG. 1. The oligonucleotide C with its complement is shown as a filled rectangle. The newly created PmlI site is marked P. The restriction endonuclease sites are abbreviated as follows: B, *Bam*HI; Ba, *Bal*I; Bs, *Bst*EII; E, *Eco*NI; H, *Hpa*I; K, *Kpn*I; Ms, *Mst*II; P, *Pml*I; Ps, *Pst*I; S, *Sal*I; X, *Xma*I.

[0086] Collectively, the HSV-1 sequences carried in plasmids A through Z, AA through NN, contain deletions which encompass the entire domain of the U_L26 open reading frame. In some instances, e.g. plasmid constructs B and D the promoter of the α 4 gene was juxtaposed in the form of the *Bam*HI Z fragment to force a higher level of transcription.

[0087] Plasmid constructs designated J through N in FIG. 1 carry in the HSV DNA's a sequence encoding a CMV epitope inserted into the unique *Mst*II site of these fragments. In all but one plasmid construct the *Bam*HI Z fragment was also inserted to augment transcription by the α 4 promoter contained in this fragment. The exception was plasmid construct N.

[0088] In plasmid O and P the CMV epitope was inserted into the unique *Hpa*I site and only the P plasmid contains the α 4 promoter in the form of the *Bam*HI Z fragment.

[0089] The following plasmids were constructed: A (pRB4057), B (pRB4060), C (pRB4058), D (pRB4089), E (pRB4093), F (pRB4056), G (pRB4087), H (pRB4088), I (pRB4026), J (pRB4092), K (pRB4094), L (pRB4096), M (pRB4095), N (pRB4102), O (pRB4079) and P (pRB4080), Q (pRB4140), R (pRB4184), S (pRB4185), T (pRB4103), U (pRB4090), V (pRB4186), W (pRB4188), X (pRB4213), Y (pRB4214), Z (pRB4215). pRB4026 was constructed by insertion of the HSV-1 fragment into the *Kpn*I site of pUC18. pRB4057 contains the entire encoding sequence of the U_L26 open reading frame, extending 3' from nucleotide -900 relative to the translation initiation site of the gene to approximately 650 nucleotides downstream from its polyadenylation site. pRB4060 was constructed by replacing the viral DNA sequence 23 bp upstream from the translation initiation site of the U_L26 open reading frame in pRB4057 with the HSV-1 DNA *Bam*HI Z fragment. The *Bam*HI Z fragment contains at one terminus, portions of the 5' transcribed non-coding sequences of the α 4 gene starting with nucleotide +33 and the upstream untranscribed domains of this gene. The *Bam*HI Z fragment was inserted in the orientation that would juxtapose the α 4 promoter in the proper transcriptional orientation to the intact and truncated domains of the U_L26 open reading frame. pRB4056, pRB4058, pRB4087, and pRB4093 were derived from pRB4057, and pRB4088 and pRB4089 were derived from pRB4060 by generating deletions by the subcloning techniques described by Sambrook et al. (1989).

[0090] Two pairs of oligonucleotides, i.e., oligonucleotide

A (5'-

AAGGGACAGAAGCCCAACCTGCTAGACCGACTGCGACACCGCAAAAACGGGTACCGA

CAC-3') with its complement, oligonucleotide B (5'-

AAAGGGACAGAAGCCCAACCTGCTAGACCGACTGCGACACCGCAAAAACGGGTACCG

ACACGA-3') with its complement, and oligonucleotide C

(5'-

TCGACGTTGACACGGCCCGCGCCGCGATTCTTCGTCTCTCAGATGATGGGGGCC

CCACGTGTGA-3'),

were synthesized in Applied Biosystems DNA Synthesizer 380A (Foster City, Calif.). Oligonucleotides A,B and their complements encode the epitope of the CH28-2 monoclonal antibody and contain a *Kpn*I site at the 3' end for convenient screening of the oligonucleotide insertion in plasmids. pRB4079 and pRB4080 were derived by inserting the oligonucleotide A sequence into the unique *Hpa*I site of pRB4057 and pRB4060 respectively. pRB4092 was derived by inserting the oligonucleotide B sequence into the unique *Mst*II site of pRB4060. pRB4094, pRB4095, pRB4096, and pRB4102 were derived from pRB4092 by generating deletions by means of common subcloning techniques (Sambrook, et al., 1989). All insertion sites of these plasmids were sequenced to verify that the CMV epitope was inserted in the same frame as the U_L26 open reading frame.

[0091] Plasmid Q (pRB4140) was derived by inserting oligonucleotide A with its complement into the unique *Pml*I site of plasmid A. The sequence encodes the authentic U_L26 sequence from the *Pml*I site to the translation termination site but with the addition of a new *Pml*I site of the U_L26 open reading frame in the proper orientation resulted in the creation of a new *Pml*I site between the carboxyl terminal amino acid and the stop codon of the U_L26 open reading frame. In addition, the sequence 'GTG' at the authentic *Pml*I site has been changed to sequence 'GTC'. By insertion of the sequence C into the unique *Pml*I site of the U_L26 open reading from the proper orientation resulted in the creation of a new *Pml*I site between the carboxyl terminal amino acid and the stop codon of U_L26. The original, authentic *Pml*I site was destroyed without changing the U_L26 amino acid sequence because the codon "GTG" and "GTC" encode the same amino acid. Therefore, the net effect of the insertion of oligonucleotide C with its complement to U_L26 open reading frame was that U_L26 had two additional amino acids between its authentic carboxyl terminal amino acid and its stop codon which were encoded by the new created *Pml*I recognition sequence. Plasmid R (pRB4184) was derived by inserting sequence C into the *Pml*I site of plasmids E (pRB4093), and S (pRB4185) was derived by inserting the oligonucleotide A with its complement into the *Pml*I site of plasmid R. Plasmids T, U, V and W (pRB4103, pRN4090, pRB4186 and pRB4188) were derived from plasmids B and S by subcloning. Plasmids X, Y and Z (pRB4213, pRB4214, and pRB4215) were constructed by inserting in frame into the U_L26 open reading frame at the site between the 3' end of the CMV sequence and the stop codon, either a sequence encoding 256 amino acids comprising five homologs of IgG binding domains of the staphylococcal protein A or a sequence encoding 129 amino acids and comprising two such domains. These sequences were the *Bcl*I-*Hinc*II fragment and *Hind*III-*Hinc*II fragment of the protein A gene fusion vector pRIT5 (Pharmacia, Piscataway, NJ), respectively. The vector for plasmids T, U, V, and Y was derived from PGEM3Zf(+) (Promega, Madison, WI) and these plasmids could be used as templates for *in vitro* transcription by T7 or Sp6 RNA polymerases. The vectors for all other plasmids were derived from pUC18 (New England Biolabs, MA). All the insertion sites of the oligonucleotide sequences A and C with their complement into the plasmids were sequenced to verify that the CMV epitope and the amino acid sequence encoded by oligonucleotide C with their complement were inserted in frame with the U_L26 open reading frame.

[0092] Constructs AA, BB, CC, DD and MM were prepared by inserting a translational stop codon into pRB4060 at *Pml*I, *Mst*II, *Bss*HII, *Hpa*I sites, and the site encoding the translation initiation codon of ICP35, respectively. Construct NN was constructed by deletion of the sequence between the ICP35 translation initiation site and stop codon. The U_L26 ORF fused to *Bam*HI Z cloned in pGEM3Zf(+) as pRB4245 was mutagenized to give rise to II, JJ KK, LL, HH and GG with the aid of the Muta-Gene Kit (Bio-Rad) in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The 40 mer oligonucleotides used for this purpose were synthesized on an Applied Biosystems model 380B DNA synthesizer. Plasmids EE and FF were constructed by cleavage with *Xba*I and religation of constructs GG and HH to delete the first 10 and 33 amino acids of U_L26, respectively. The symbols used in FIG. 1 are as follows: Open quadrangle: the *Bam*HI Z fragment used as the source of the α 4 promoter and inserted in the proper transcriptional orientation relative to that of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frame; filled oval: the 20 amino acid CMV epitope, described herein; filled rectangle: the DNA sequence encoding the IgG binding domain of protein A; P*: a new *Pml*I site created in conjunction with the

insertion of the IgG binding domain of protein A. The new translational initiation codons produced by *in vitro* mutagenesis are marked "ATG". The filled triangles represent the inserted stop codon. The restriction endonuclease sites were abbreviated as follows: B, BamHI; Ba, Ba1I; Bs, BstEII; E, EcoNI; H, HpaI; K, KpnI; Ms, MstII; P, Pm1I; Ps, PstI; S, Sa1I; X, XcmI. Me represents the methionine translation initiation codon of the U_L26.5 open reading frame.

[0093] A restriction endonuclease map is drawn to scale on-line 9 of FIG. 1 with reference to lines A through Z which are schematic representations of the HSV-1 sequences contained in the plasmid constructs used in the studies described herein.

Example 2

Use Of The Plasmids To Isolate And Purify Viral Components

[0094] Host cells were transfected with the plasmid constructs of FIG. 1. In addition, the protease was synthesized *in vitro* from rabbit reticulocyte lysate systems with the plasmids. Photographs of polypeptides from cells that were transfected with the plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, taken after the electrophoretic separation in polyacrylamide gels, electrical transferring to a nitrocellulose sheet, and reaction with goat anti-mouse immunoglobulin antibody coupled to peroxidase, were used to analyze the nucleic acid sequences responsible for the mechanisms of infection. Experimental details of the polypeptide purification are described in the Materials and Methods.

[0095] Constructs MM and NN were used to determine whether any ICP35 coding sequences in the protease are essential for ICP35 cleavage.

Example 3

Analysis of Transcriptional Units

[0096] The nucleotide sequences of U_L26 surprisingly and unexpectedly were found to be contained in two transcriptional units. Two probes were constructed to map the transcripts of U_L26. Probe 1, designed to identify the 5' terminus of the U_L26 in RNA, consisted of the *Eco*NI-*Bam*HI fragment labelled at the *Bam*HI site whereas probe 2 consisted of the *Xcm*I-*Bst*EII fragment labelled at the *Bst*EII site.

[0097] An autoradiographic image of DNA probe 1 (A) and probe 2 (B) hybridized to total cytoplasmic RNA from mock-infected and 12-h-infected Vero cells and digested with S1 nuclease, is presented in FIG. 3. The RNAs were prepared as described in the Materials and Methods herein. In FIG. 3, lane 1 (PS), an S1-digested probe 1 appears as it is under the same conditions of hybridization and digestion as those shown in lanes MOCK and HSV-1.

[0098] Lanes 2 and 8 (MOCK), shows RNA extracted from cells 12 h after mock infection. Lanes 3 and 9 (HSV-1), shows RNA extracted from cells infected with HSV-1(F) and maintained for 12 h.

[0099] Lanes 4 and 7 (P), indicate positions of the undigested probes (probe 1 or 2).

[0100] Lanes 5 and 7 (M), present 5' end-labeled fragments obtained from digestion of PGEM3Z DNA with the enzyme *Msp*I.

[0101] Arrows in FIG. 3 indicate the protected 5' termini of U_L26(A) and U_L26.5(B) RNAs. T, Position of the HSV-1 sequences in probe 2 protected by the U_L26 RNA.

[0102] The results of the S1 analyses illustrated in FIG. 3 are that cytoplasmic RNA hybridized to probe 1 protected a fragment approximately 300 nucleotides long(lane 3).

[0103] Nucleotide 300 upstream from the *Bam*HI site was designated as +1 of U_L26. The first methionine codon after the approximate transcription initiation site is at position +180.

[0104] Cytoplasmic RNA hybridized to probe 2 yielded two sets of fragments protected from S1 digestion (lane 9). The first fragment contained all of the HSV-1 DNA sequences(band T). The second set of protected fragments formed several bands ranging from 35-40 nucleotides in length(lane 2, band U_L26.5). Thus, the transcription initiation site of this transcript was approximately at nucleotide +1000 relative to nucleotide +1 of U_L26. The first methionine codon downstream from the transcription initiation site of this RNA was at position +1099. The longer RNA was designated U_L26.

Example 4

Location and Isolation Of The ICP 35 Gene

[0105] In order to localize the position of the coding domain of the gene specifying ICP35, a series of deletions in open reading frame U_L26 were tested for their capacity to express ICP35.

[0106] BHK cells were transfected with plasmid constructs O, N and P (FIG. 1) then infected with HSV-2 (FIG. 4).

The letters across the top of the gel shown in FIG. 4 identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash or the absence of a letter indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The vertical lines identify the slow-migrating bands. The shortest fragment which yielded HSV-1 ICP35 was plasmid E (lane 2). Because this plasmid construct was expressed from its endogenous promoter, the results indicate that the sequences contained in the *HpaI-PstI* fragment contain both the coding sequences and the promoter of the gene encoding ICP35. Plasmid E contains all of the sequences of U_L26.5 RNA plus 168 nucleotides.

Example 5

Open Reading Frame Isolation And Characterization

[0107] In FIG. 5, a photograph of polypeptides extracted from cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, was taken after electrophoretical separation in polyacrylamide gels, electrical transferring to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacting with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash or the absence of a letter indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The vertical lines identify the slow-migrating bands.

[0108] FIG. 5 shows that BHK cells transfected with construct J, K, or L made a family of proteins which reacted with both anti-HSV-1 ICP35 (H725) and anti-CMV (CH28-2) monoclonal antibodies. The formation of the characteristic four ICP35 bands by the products of transfection of plasmid construct L indicates that the initiating methionine codon for ICP35 is at position 1099.

[0109] These results indicate that the U_L26.5 coding sequences specifying ICP35 constitute a part of, and are in frame with, those of U_L26. In the preceding section it was shown that ICP35 could be expressed by transactivation of the DNA sequences contained in the *HpaI-PstI* fragment. Because plasmid construct E could be transactivated by HSV-2, it may also be concluded that the coding sequences of U_L26 include both the coding sequences and the promoter domain of the gene specifying ICP35.

Example 6

Use of Anti-CMV mAb

[0110] A photograph of polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1, was taken after electrophoretical separation in SDS polyacrylamide gels, electrical transferring to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacting with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). The letters across the top of the gel shown in FIG. 6 identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash or the absence of a letter indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The vertical lines identify the slow-migrating bands. These results indicate that use of the anti-CMV monoclonal antibody obviates the need to superinfect the cell with a heterologous virus.

Example 7

Identification, Isolation and Characterization of the Product of the U_L26 ORF

[0111] FIG. 7 presents autoradiographic images and a photograph of polypeptides from BHK cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with virus, after the cells were electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets, and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. The vertical line and arrow identify the product of the U_L26 protein.

[0112] In FIG. 7, lanes 1, 2, and 3 are autoradiographic images of proteins labeled with [³⁵S]methionine as described in the Materials and Methods. The infected cell proteins (ICPs) of HSV-2 were numbered according to Morse et al. (1978).

[0113] Lanes 8, 9, and 10 show lysates of the same cells as shown in lane 4, 5, and 6 stained with H725 rather than with the CH28-2 monoclonal antibodies.

[0114] Lane 7 shows the lysate of cells transfected with plasmid construct J, in which U_L26 is driven by the α 4 promoter, infected with HSV-1(F) and maintained at 39°C. Under these conditions, only α and a few β proteins are expressed, but the ICP35 of HSV-1(F) is not expressed. The ICP35 in the HSV-1(F) viral genome is not expressed. The ICP35 encoded by the plasmid construct is expressed inasmuch as the transfected gene is regulated as a β gene.

[0115] In the preceding sections it was shown that the sequences encoding ICP35 overlapped only a portion of the sequence designated the U_L26 ORF. The purpose of the studies presented in the following sections was to identify the

product of the full length U_L26 open reading frame. BHK cells were transfected with plasmid construct O,N, or P (FIG. 1). and then infected with HSV-2. The electrophoretically separated proteins from cells transfected with plasmids O,N, and P, were reacted with monoclonal antibodies to either HSV-1(H725) or CMV(CH28-2) (FIG. 7 lanes 4 through 6 and 8 through 10) and then autoradiographed to provide molecular weight markers (lanes 1 through 3). The salient features of the results were as follows:

(1) the plasmid constructs O and P containing the CMV epitope inserted in frame with U_L26 specified proteins which formed two bands with electrophoretic mobilities corresponding approximately to proteins with apparent molecular weights of 75,000 to 78,000 (FIG. 7, lanes 4 and 6). The CMV monoclonal antibody did not react with ICP35 bands produced by plasmids O and P(lanes 4 and 6). The CMV epitope was inserted at the *Hpa*I restriction endonuclease site(+832),i.e. before the translation initiation site of ICP35 at position +1099.

(2) All plasmid constructs made ICP35 which reacted with H725 monoclonal antibody against HSV-1 ICP35. The disparity in the electrophoretic mobilities of the ICP35 proteins made by plasmid constructs N and P reflect the insertion into plasmid construct N of the oligonucleotide encoding an additional 21 amino acids.

(3) The abundance of proteins specified by the entire U_L26 ORF relative to that of the ICP35 protein may be deduced from the observation that while both of the Mr75,000-78,000kd proteins and the ICP35 react with the same monoclonal antibody, CH28-2, the reactivity or amount of the larger protein is considerably lower than that observed for ICP35.

[0116] The compelling evidence that the two proteins share amino acid sequences is based on the observation that construct J under conditions of overproduction of the U_L26 proteins yielded proteins which co-migrated with both the larger protein and ICP35 and reacted with the CH28-2 monoclonal antibody (arrow, FIG. 7, lane 7).

Example 8

Characterization of U_L26 and U_L26.5 Proteins

[0117] An autoradiographic image of the ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate and electrophoretically separated in a 9.5% denaturing polyacrylamide gel are shown in FIG. 8.

[0118] In lane 1 are translation products of bromo mosaic virus templates provided with a kit obtained from Promega Biotec, WI as transcribed according to the manufacturer's suggestions. Lane 2 shows translation products of the U_L26 open reading frame in plasmid U. Lane 3 shows the translation product of the U_L26.5 open reading frame in plasmid T. These results indicated that U_L26 and U_L26.5 specify proteins each of which form double bonds with apparent molecular weights of 80,000kd (*Pra*) and 45,000 (ICP35d,c) respectively.

Example 9

The Gene Product of U_L26 Is Required to Process ICP35c,d into e,f in Transposition

[0119] A photograph of electrophoretically separated polypeptides from BHK cells transfected with plasmid constructs and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C (34°) or at 39°C (39°), electrophoretically separated in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 to HSV-1 ICP35 (HSV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled to peroxidase, is presented in FIG. 9. Experimental details are described in the Materials and Methods herein. The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The letters on the side were assigned to different species of ICP according to Braun et al. (1984).

[0120] The ICP35 bands e and f are the products of the cleavage of the proteins in bands c and d. The proteins migrating in bands c', d', e' and f' contain the CMV epitope and therefore migrate more slowly than the authentic proteins in bands c, d, e and f, respectively.

[0121] Earlier experiments suggested that ICP35c, d were the precursors of ICP35e, f (Braun et al., 1984; Preston et al., 1983). To test this hypothesis, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid E containing U_L26.5 gene (FIG. 1) and superinfected with HSV-1(F) at 39°C. This virus is temperature sensitive and at 39°C it does not express its own U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames. The results (FIG. 10) show the following:

(1) The ICP35 gene resident in the viral genome was expressed at 34°C (lane 1) but not at 39°C (lane 2) as evidenced by the presence and absence of the ICP35 bands reactive with the H725 monoclonal antibody to ICP35,

respectively.

(2) ICP35c, d were the only two species of ICP35 proteins expressed from the one reading frame in plasmid E at 39°C (lane 4), whereas at least ICP35c, d, e and f could be detected in lysates of productively infected cells maintained at 34°C (lane 1).

[0122] These results led to the conclusion that:

(a) ICP35c, d are the unprocessed forms of the ICP35 proteins; that

(b) they can be processed into ICP35e, f; and that

(c) the processing requires a *trans*acting factor because processing did not occur in the absence of HSV-1(F) late gene expression.

Example 10

U_L26 Can Act In *trans* to Process ICP35c and -d Into ICP35e and -f and U_L26 Is Competent and the Only Viral Protein Required for the Processing of ICP35c and -d Into ICP35e and -f

[0123] To determine whether U_L26 acts in *trans* or in *cis*, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid N as the substrate for processing and with a series of plasmids containing deletions in the U_L26 open reading frame, infected with HSV-1(F), and maintained at 39°C. The results (FIG. 10A) showed the following:

(i) ICP35c and -d did not autocatalyze their processing into ICP35e and -f, inasmuch as the lysates of cells cotransfected with plasmid N and E (FIG. 1) did not contain ICP35e and -f reactive with the CMV monoclonal antibody (lane 8).

(ii) ICP35c and -d were not processed in BHK cells cotransfected with plasmids N and C or I (lanes 7 and 6). Plasmids C and I contain deletions in the promoter region and at the polyadenylation site of the U_L26 open reading frame, respectively (FIG. 1).

(iii) ICP35c and -d were processed into ICP35e and -f in BHK cells cotransfected with plasmids N and A or B. Plasmids A and B contain the intact U_L26 promoter and open reading frame and the U_L26 coding sequence driven by the α 4 promoter, respectively (lanes 5 and 4). The α -transducing factor is HSV-1(F) induces the α 4 promoter to a high level at 39°C. The high level of expression of U_L26 may explain the presence of the processed forms of ICP35 (forms e and f) in lysates of cells cotransfected with plasmids N and B (lane 4).

[0124] The results indicate that U_L26 encodes a protein involved in the processing of ICP35c and -d into ICP35e and -f.

[0125] To determine whether U_L26 is the only viral protein required for this processing to exclude the possibility that viral genes expressed by the HSV-1(F) genome at 39°C contribute to the catalysis of ICP35, BHK cells were cotransfected with a constant amount of plasmid L and different amounts of plasmid B as the genes encoding the substrate and the enzyme for the processing, respectively. In plasmid L (FIG. 1), the U_L26.5 open reading frame was regulated by the α 4 promoter and the CMV epitope was inserted at the *Mst*II restriction endonuclease site, whereas plasmid B contained the intact U_L26 open reading frame driven by the same promoter. Since the α 4 promoter is a strong eukaryotic promoter constitutively expressed in transfected cells (Kristie & Roizman, 1991; Post et al., 1981), expression of the U_L26.5 and U_L26 proteins in cells transfected with plasmids L and B did not require superinfections with HSV-1(F). The results (FIG. 10B) were as follows:

(i) In the absence of viral infection, ICP35c and -d were the only two species expressed in cells transfected with plasmid L (lane 17). The epitopically marked ICP35 expressed by plasmid L was fully processed in cells superinfected with HSV-1(F) at the permissive temperature (lane 18). As expected, plasmid B did not produce products reactive with the anti-CMV antibody (lane 11).

(ii) In the presence of plasmid B containing U_L26, the epitopically marked ICP35c and -d expressed by plasmid L were processed into ICP35e and -f. At low concentrations of plasmid B, the extent of accumulation of ICP35e and -f was directly proportional to the amount of U_L26 plasmid DNA cotransfected with plasmid L into BHK cells (lanes

12 to 16). The decrease in the amounts of ICP35e and -f observed in the presence of the highest amounts of plasmid B may reflect competition between the two plasmids or reduced yield as a result of the toxicity caused by the high amounts of DNA.

- 5 [0126] The conclusion from these studies that the product of U_L26 is the only viral factor both competent and sufficient to process ICP35c and -d into ICP35 e and -f.

Example 11

10 The Protease Effects Carboxyl Terminal Cleavage

[0127] A photograph of polypeptides from cells transfected with plasmids and either mock-infected or superinfected with HSV-1(F) (HSV-1) or HSV-2(G) (HSV-2) either at 34°C (34°, lanes 1 and 4), at 39°C (39°, lanes 2 and 5), or at 37°C (lanes 3 and 6-14), electrophoretically separated in denaturing polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to a nitro-cellulose sheet, reacted with monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV-Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab) and stained with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody coupled with peroxidase, is presented in FIG. 11. The letters across the top of the gel identify the plasmid constructs with which the cells were transfected. A dash indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected.

[0128] Another aspect of this invention is the type of cleavage effected by the protease. Processing of ICP35c, d to e, f involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage.

[0129] Inasmuch as ICP35e, f specified by plasmid N comigrated in denaturing gels with ICP35c, d produced in HSV-1 infected cells (FIG. 10, Panel A, lanes 1 and 5), it may be deduced that the portion of the ICP35 cleaved during processing is roughly equivalent to the size of the CMV amino acid sequence inserted into plasmid N. To determine whether ICP35 processing involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage, BHK cells were transfected with plasmids J, R, S and W and superinfected with HSV-2. Plasmid R contained the CMV epitope (sequence A) inserted in the *Pml*I site of U_L26.5 whereas in plasmids S and W the insert was at the carboxyl terminal amino acid. Analyses of the electrophoretic separated, electrically transferred polypeptides with the anti HSV-1 (H725) and anti CMV (CH28-3) monoclonal antibodies revealed the following (FIG. 11):

30 (1) Cells transfected with plasmid J in which the CMV epitope was inserted at the *Mst*II site 122 amino acids upstream from the U_L26 stop codon made both the precursor ICP35c, d and products ICP35 e, f which reacted with the CMV antibody (lane 8). The decrease in the electrophoretic mobility of ICP35c, d, e and f relative to the wild type proteins corresponds to the increase in the molecular weight due to the insertion of the CMV epitope.

35 (2) Only ICP35c, d were made in cells transfected with plasmid Q (Lanes 3 and 6). In this plasmid the CMV epitope was inserted into the *Pml*I site of U_L26, which is 21 amino acids upstream from U_L26.5 stop codon. The identification of the ICP35c, d forms was based on the observation that they co-migrated with the corresponding forms specified by plasmid L which expressed only ICP35c, d in transfected cells (FIG. 10, Panel B, lane 17).

40 (3) Insertion of sequence C into plasmid R at *Pml*I restriction endonuclease site destroyed this site and created a new *Pml*I cleavage site between the carboxyl terminal amino acid and the stop codon of U_L26 without changing the amino acid sequences of either U_L26 or U_L26.5. ICP35c, d, e and f detected with H725 monoclonal antibody co-migrated with the authentic proteins (lane 11), indicating the insertion of sequence C had no effect on ICP35 expression and processing.

45 (4) In plasmid S and W the CMV epitope was inserted into the new *Pml*I site of plasmid R at the carboxyl terminus of U_L26.5. Cells transfected with these plasmids accumulated ICP35c, d e, and f reactive with HSV-1 H725 monoclonal antibody (lanes 10, 14) but only the ICP35c and d forms reacted with the CMV CH28-2 monoclonal antibody (lanes 9, 14). The significant finding is that whereas ICP35c, and d forms of plasmid S co-migrated with the corresponding forms of plasmid J, i.e. they were 21 amino acids longer than wild type, the ICP 35e, f indicating that the inserted amino acid sequence encoding the CMV epitope was removed (lanes 9 and 10). The products specified by plasmid W behaved in the same manner (FIG. 11). ICP35e, and f specified by plasmid W were more abundant than those specified by plasmids S and R possibly because in plasmid W the entire U_L26 open reading frame was reconstituted and more of the protein product was expressed and made available to process ICP35.

55 [0130] The cleavage of the precursor ICP35 protein is approximately 20 amino acids from the carboxyl terminal codon. Evidence for this conclusion was that

(1) insertion of the CMV epitope 21 amino acids from the terminus interfered with the cleavage, whereas insertion of the epitope at the carboxyl terminus enabled the cleavage to take effect;

(2) the comigration of ICP35e', and f' (with CMV epitope) and ICP35c, d. The comigration places the CMV-inserted e and f in the same approximate gel location as c, d in the authentic protease.

[0131] An unexpected correlation between the cleavage mechanism used to produce the ICP35 subunits and to autoproces the U_L26 protease was that both involve carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage. In the preceding sections, it was demonstrated that U_L26 is the only viral factor responsible for the carboxyl terminal proteolytic processing of ICP35. U_L26 coding for the protease and U_L26.5 coding for ICP35 also share the same carboxyl terminal amino acid sequence. The possibility that U_L26 cleaves itself emerged from the observation that in BHK cells transfected with plasmid P (FIG. 1) and superinfected with HSV-1(F) either at 34°C or at 39°C expressed a doublet band of U_L26 (FIG. 11, lane 4 and 5) which reacted with CH28-2 monoclonal antibody. This observation suggested the possibility that U_L26 may catalyze its own cleavage because HSV-1(F) expresses primarily α genes at 39°C.

Example 12

The Protease Cleaves Itself

[0132] In FIG. 12 an autoradiographic image of ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by U_L26 open reading frame, and electrophoretically separated in a denaturing polyacrylamide gel, is shown. The U_L26 open reading frame contained in plasmids U and V (FIG. 1) was transcribed *in vitro* and translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate. The lanes shown represent positions removed from the translation mixture at 10, 20, 90, and 360 minutes post initiation of translation. For samples shown in lanes 4-7 and 12-15, cycloheximide was added to the translation mixture at 10 minutes post initiation of translation to inhibit further translation. In the case of lanes 1-3, the translation mixture at 10 minutes post initiation of translation was diluted 10-fold in phosphate-buffered saline containing cycloheximide (100 μ g/ml).

[0133] Additional evidence that U_L26 can catalyze its own cleavage emerged from *in vitro* studies. RNA transcribed from plasmids U or V (FIG. 1) *in vitro* by T7 or Sp6 RNA polymerases were translated in a nuclease treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate in the presence of [³⁵S]-methionine. Analyses of the electrophoretically separated products of the translation reaction were as follows (FIG. 12):

(1) Incubation of the translation products of the U plasmid in the presence of cycloheximide resulted in gradual accumulation of the cleavage product (*P_{rb}*) of the U_L26 protein. The amount of accumulated cleavage product was proportional to the duration of the incubation (lanes 16-19).

(2) Identical results were obtained with the translation of products of plasmid V. The significance of this experiment stems from the presence of the CMV epitope at the carboxyl terminus of U_L26. As expected, the precursor form of U_L26 made from plasmid V migrated more slowly than the authentic protein derived from plasmid U. However, the processed form of U_L26 synthesized from plasmid V co-migrated with that of the authentic protein from plasmid U, indicating that the U_L26 autoprocesing involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage.

Example 13

Cleavage of ICP35c,d and *P_{ra}* are Sequence Specific and are at the Same Site

[0134] Autoradiographic images (FIG. 13, Panel A) and a photograph of polypeptides (FIG. 13, Panel B) either synthesized *in vitro* from sequences encoded in plasmids U or Y or contained in lysates of cell transfected with plasmids X or Z and superinfected with HSV-1(F) or HSV-1(G) are presented in FIG. 13. The *in vitro* synthesized polypeptides and those contained in cell lysates were electrophoretically separated in the same denaturing 12% polyacrylamide gel, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, and reacted with monoclonal antibody anti-mouse IgG conjugated with horseradish peroxidase (Anti-IgG) only, or with this anti-IgG antibody in addition to the monoclonal antibody H725 (HSV Ab) or CH28-2 (CMV Ab). A dash indicates that the cells were infected but not transfected. The polypeptides shown in panel A were labeled with ³⁵S-methionine. The band designations were as follows: Letters c, d, e, f, without primes identify authentic ICP35 products of U_L26.5 open reading frame. *P_{ra}* and *P_{rb}* are the translation processed forms of the protease products of the U_L26 open reading frame. The double and triple primes indicate that the protein also contains the CMV epitope and the sequence encoding two IgG and five IgG binding domains of staphylococcus protein A, respectively. *PA''* and *PA'''* are the carboxyl terminus products of the cleavage of the ICP35c, d and *P_{ra}* proteins con-

taining inserts of CMV epitope and IgG binding domains.

[0135] The cleavage of ICP35c, d and *Pra* are sequence-specific and are at the same site. The results of the experiments presented herein suggested that the cleavage/processing of the products of U_L26 and U_L26.5 occurred at a site approximately 18-25 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus of the proteins. To demonstrate that the processing of these proteins occurs at the predicted site, it was necessary to demonstrate both products of the cleavage reaction on the same gel. In order to visualize both products, it was necessary to insert into the coding sequence at the predicted carboxyl terminus both the epitope for the CMV monoclonal antibody and the sequences encoding the IgG binding domains of staphylococcal protein A. Plasmids X and Z were constructed by inserting in frame the sequences coding for 129 and 256 amino acids comprising two and five IgG binding domains of protein A, respectively, in frame between the 3' terminus of the CMV epitope and the stop codon of U_L26 (FIG. 1).

[0136] Two experiments were done. In the first, the HSV-1 open reading frames in plasmids U and Y were transcribed and translated for six hours. The proteins translated *in vitro* were then electrophoretically separated in a denaturing gel (FIG. 13, Panel A). In the second experiment, BHK cells were transfected with plasmids Z or X and then superinfected with HSV-2(G). The cell lysates were electrophoretically separated in the same gel as that used for the separation of the *in vitro* translated protein, electrically transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet, and reacted with antibody to CMV, HSV, or with anti-IgG antibody that would bind to IgG binding domains of protein A (FIG. 13, Panel B). The results were as follows:

(i) Autocatalytic processing of the *in vitro* transcribed, translated HSV-1 sequences in plasmid U yielded as expected the protein bands designated as *Pra* and *Prb*. Similar autocatalytic processing of the products of the Z band yielded three bands. The first band migrated slower than the authentic precursor *Pra* band, as would be expected from the presence of additional 256 amino acids of protein A and the 21 amino acids constitution the CMV epitope. The second band co-migrated with the *Prb* band and is therefore the product of the autocatalytic cleavage of the translation product. The third band co-migrated with the bands described below and which reacted with the CMV as well as with the anti-IgG antibody.

(ii) the expected translation products of the plasmid X were ICP35c, d and *Pra*. It could be expected that the translation products of the plasmid Z should be similar except that, because of the smaller inserts of the protein A sequences, these proteins should migrate correspondingly faster than those of the plasmid X. This was in fact the case (compare lanes 3,5 and 8 with those of 4, 6 and 9). It could also be predicted that if the cleavage of the ICP35c, d, occurs as expected 20 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus of the authentic protein, that the amino terminus products of the cleavage reaction should co-migrate with the authentic ICP35 and react only with the HSV-1 monoclonal antibody. This was in fact the case inasmuch as ICP35e and f produced by plasmid Z and X (lanes 5 and 6) co-migrate with the authentic ICP35e and f (lane 7) and were detectable solely by the HSV-1 specific monoclonal antibody. Conversely, it could be expected that the carboxyl terminus products of the cleavage reaction should migrate in accordance with their size, and should react with both anti IgG and CMV antibodies. As shown in Panel B of FIG. 7 the bands reactive with the anti IgG antibody from lysates of cell transfected with plasmid X migrated slower than the corresponding Z bands. However, because all of the carboxyl terminal cleavage products contained the IgG binding domains of protein A, all of the protein products would be expected to react with IgG irrespective of specificity of the immunoglobulin (e.g., bands 5 and 6).

[0137] Inasmuch as both products were detected, the results indicate that ICP35c, d and *Pra*, the products of the U_L26.5 and U_L26, respectively, are both translationally processed by cleavage. Because the two proteins share amino acid sequences for the entire length of ICP35c, d and because the products of the cleavage of the two proteins co-migrate, the two proteins are cleaved at identical sites. Finally, the translational products of both open reading frames *in vitro* resolve into double bands. The double bands are particularly noticeable in the case of ICP35 (forms c and d). In all of the experiments done to date including those shown in FIG. 11 the carboxyl terminal product of the cleavage formed a single band. This observation is consistent with the hypothesis that the differences in the proteins which form the doublets are at the amino rather than the carboxyl termini of the proteins.

Example 14

Expression System of Protease as an Assay

[0138] Shown in FIG. 14 is the autoradiographic image of ³⁵S-methionine labeled polypeptides encoded by U_L26 open reading frame electrophoretically separated in a denaturing gel. The U_L26 open reading frame contained in plasmid U and Y (FIG. 1) was transcribed *in vitro* and translated in nuclease treated rabbit reticulocyte lysates. Lane 1 shown represents the portion removed from the translation mixture at 360 minutes post initiation of translation. Lanes

2-5 shown represent portions removed from the translation mixture either at 10 minutes (0) or at 360 minutes (360) post initiation of translation. For samples shown in lanes 2-5, the equivalent amount of translation mixture at 10 minutes post initiation of translation was diluted 20-fold in phosphate-buffered saline containing cycloheximide (100 microgram/ml) and either sodium dodecyl sulphate (SDS) (0.4%) (lane 3) or phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride (PMSF) (500 micro-

grams/ml) (lane 4).
 [0139] As shown in FIG. 14, PMSF was capable of partially inhibiting the protease self-cleavage. In lane 5, normal self cleavage is shown. In line 3, there is 100% inhibition by SDS. The interpretation of Fig. 14 is that 1) SDS, a denaturing detergent, completely inhibits protease activity (lane 3); 2) the protease can self-cleave in the absence of a protease inhibitor; and 3) there is partial inhibition of protease by PMSF, a serine protease inhibitor.

Example 15

Characterization of Domains of the Protease Protein

[0140] Characteristics of the protease protein include: (i) it contains several domains which are not required for its catalytic activity and (ii) the active site is near the amino terminus of the protease.

[0141] The experimental design employed to arrive at these characteristics was based on two observations. First, insertion of additional amino acid sequences including the IgG binding domains from staphylococcal protein A into the carboxyl terminus of the protease does not interfere with the self cleavage of the protease, but yields a readily detectable product of the reaction. Second, insertion of the sequence encoding a 20 amino acid epitope of human cytomegalovirus monoclonal antibody in frame into the coding domains of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 ORFs serves two purposes. Foremost, it serves to identify specifically the products of these ORFs. Second, by separating the various domains of the protease, it serves to identify regions of the protease which must be contiguous for its catalytic function.

A. Delineation of the functional domains of the UL26 protein.

[0142] Three sets of mutants of the U_L26 protease (Table I) were used to explore the protease domains. Set 1 was prepared for mapping of the U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and consisted of 3 U_L26 genes into which were inserted in frame at various sites, DNA sequences encoding a 20 amino acid CMV epitope.

[0143] The second set consisted of 10 U_L26 gene constructs with either stop codons or deletions spanning various regions of the gene (Table I).

[0144] Set 3 consists of 6 U_L26 genes containing substitutions in predicted amino acid sequences starting in the region of amino acids 7 to 215. As described in the following sections, the U_L26 gene in each of these plasmids was expressed from an α 4 promoter. The target of the protease was usually the U_L26.5 gene cloned in plasmid L (FIG. 1) and containing in frame the CMV epitope insert. The exceptions, clones P and J contained the U_L26 gene containing the CMV epitope either in the coding sequence of both the U_L26 and U_L26.5 gene (plasmid J) or only in the U_L26 coding domain (plasmid P).

[0145] Typically, BHK cells were transfected with plasmid L and one of the plasmids encoding a protease, and superinfected with HSV-1(F) at 39°C. The cell lysates were electrophoretically separated in denaturing gels, transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet and reacted with the HSV monoclonal antibody H725 which reacts with all U_L26.5 products and CMV monoclonal antibody CH28-2 which reacts only with the U_L26.5 products which contain the CMV epitope (see FIG. 15). Because the HSV-1(F) contains a temperature sensitive lesion in the α 4 genes specifying the major HSV-1 regulatory protein, it does not express its own U_L26 protease or substrate at 39°C. However, the α -gene *trans*-inducing factor (VP16) is functional at higher temperatures (Post et al., 1981; Batterson et al., 1983) and transactivates the expression of the genes specifying both the protease (U_L26) and the substrate (U_L26.5). The results (FIG. 15) were as follows:

(1) The U_L26.5 gene resident in the viral genome yielded protein bands reactive with the HSV monoclonal antibody at 34°C (lanes 1 and 14) but not at 39°C (lanes 2 and 15). Furthermore, the presence of the products of proteolytic cleavage (bands e and f) indicate that the viral protease encoded by U_L26 was also made at 34°C.

(2) The U_L26 protease encoded in the viral genome was not expressed at 39°C (lane 3). Thus in the absence of the plasmid encoding the protease, the substrate encoded by plasmid L was made (bands c, d) but not cleaved to yield bands e, f indicating that the proteases encoded in the viral genome was not expressed at the non permissive temperature.

(3) Only the precursor forms of ICP35 c, d derived from plasmid L accumulated in cells transfected with the mutated U_L26 genes in plasmids H (lane 4), G (lane 5), CC (lane 7), D (lane 9), DD (lane 11), FF (3 lane 13), and II (lane

21), and JJ (lane 23). In these plasmids, the protease activity of the gene product was inactivated.

(4) Both the precursor and product forms of ICP35 derived from Plasmid L accumulated in cells transfected with the mutated U_L26 genes AA (lanes 6), B (FIG. 15, lane 8), BB (lane 10), EE (lane 12), GG (lane 20), HH (3 lane 19), and KK (lane 22), P (lane 25), MM (lane 26) and NN (lane 27).

(5) As noted above, in plasmid P the 20 amino acid epitope was inserted after the amino acid 218, i.e. upstream from the coding domain of the substrate protein encoded by U_L26.5. The protease encoded by plasmid P cleaved itself (lanes 16, 17) and ICP 35 (lane 25). Plasmid J contained the CMV insert after the amino acid 514 (FIG. 1). In the assays (lane 18), it cleaved the product of the U_L26 encoded in plasmid J itself. The only cleavage product detected in this assay was band e. Because the epitope was also inserted into the U_L26.5 protein, it is conceivable that the inserted 20 amino acid epitope interfered with, and diminished the efficiency of, the cleavage. The protease encoded by plasmid Q (FIG. 1 and Table I) encodes a protease which cleaved the product of the U_L26 genes specified by other plasmids, but not by the gene encoded in its own domain

TABLE I

List of mutations in the gene encoding the U_L26 protease
Designation Mutation introduced into wild type gene

Insertion Mutants (20 amino acid CMV epitope)

P Insertion after amino acid 218.
J Insertion after amino acid 514.
Q Insertion after amino acid 615.

Construction of deletion mutants

D Deletion of amino acids 1-220.
G Deletion of amino acid 219-615.
EE Deletion of amino acids 1-9.
FF Deletion of amino acids 1-32.
AA Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 615
BB Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 514
CC Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 287
DD Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 218
MM Insertion of stop codon after amino acid 306
NN Deletion of amino acid 307-635

Amino acid substitutions

GG Gly₇AspArg with SerArgThr (new XbaI site)*
HH Asp₃₁SerGly with LeuAspMet (new XbaI site)
II His₆₁ with Val (new AatII site).
JJ His₁₄₈ with Ala (new PstI site).
KK Ser₂₁₅ with Ala (new NheI site).
LL Asp₃₄ with Ala (new NheI site)

* The substituted sequences were as follows: plasmid GG: CCGGGAGACCGATG with CCGTCTAGAACCATG; plasmid HH: TATGACAGCGGGAC with TATCTAGACATGAC; plasmid II: GACCACCGC with GACOTCCGC; plasmid JJ: GCOACOTC with OCTGCAOTC; plasmid KK: ACOCTTCCACC with ACOCTAGCCACC; plasmid LL: GGGACTCGGG with GGGCTAOCGGC.

because the epitope inserted after amino acid 615 interfered with the cleavage.

[0146] FIG. 16. is a summary in the form of a schematic representation of the results of the mutagenesis studies.

The numbers refer to the amino acid numbers predicted from the nucleotide sequence of the U_L26 ORF reported by McGeoch et al. (1988). The amino acids shown for insertion are immediately preceding the site of insertion. The amino acids are identified by a single letter code. Open symbols indicates that the protease was functional. Closed symbols indicates the protease was inactivated by mutagenesis. The line at the bottom of the figure identifies the domains of the protease (Nos. I-IV). The restriction endonuclease sites were abbreviated as follows: B: BstEII, H: HpaI, M: MstII, P: PmlI. Me represents the methionine translation initiation codon of U_L26.5 open reading frame.

B. Characteristics of the domains of the U_L26 protease.

[0147] The results shown in FIG. 15 and summarized in FIG. 16 indicate that the U_L26 protease consists of 4 domains of which two are dispensable and two are not. The dispensable domains I and IV extend from amino acid 1 through 9, but not to 32, and from the carboxyl terminus (amino acid 635) to at least 307 but not to amino acid 287, respectively. The domain No. III appears to extend from at least amino acid 218 to at most amino acid 306. This domain can be displaced by at least 20 amino acids (CMV epitope insertion after amino acid 218) relative to the amino terminal portion of the protease. Domain No. II is also not dispensable and apparently is located between amino acids 10 and 218.

C. The catalytic domain of the U_L26 protease.

[0148] The studies with protease inhibitors suggest that the U_L26 could be predicted to belong to either the chymotrypsin or subtilisin superfamilies of serine proteases (Kraut, 1977; Neurath, 1983). A shared property of the two serine protease superfamilies are active sites containing histidine, aspartic acid, and serine amino acids.

[0149] The substrate of the protease, ICP35 has been reported to play a role as a scaffolding protein in the assembly of the HSV capsid (Newcomb et al., 1991). The sequence of events in the replication of other herpes viruses is similar, and homologues of ICP35 have been reported (Robson and Gibson, 1989). Of particular interest was the question whether homologues of the U_L26 ORF in other herpes viruses contained conserved histidine, aspartic acid and serine amino acids which triad plays a role in the proteolytic activity of U_L26 protease.

[0150] Nucleotide sequence comparisons indicate that the ORF 33 of varicella zoster virus and the CMV U_L80 ORF of human cytomegalovirus encode homologues of the U_L26 ORF of HSV-1 (McGeoch et al., 1988; Chee et al., 1990; Davison and Scott, 1986). The amino acid sequence comparison between HSV U_L26, CMV U_L80 and VZV gene 33 protein indicated the amino terminus is the most conserved domain of the U_L26 protease. The conclusion that the protease maps in the amino proximal domain of the U_L26 ORF is consistent with the observation that ICP35, the product of U_L26.5 ORF, is devoid of enzymatic activity. To explore the conserved amino acids in the amino proximal domain of U_L26, the substitutions in the amino acids encoded in plasmids GG, II, JJ, KK and LL probed Asp₃₁Ser₃₂, Asp₃₄, His₆₁, His₁₄₈, and Ser₂₁₅. The results indicated that the only amino acids whose substitutions abolished enzymatic activity were the conserved histidines at positions 61 and 148. In anticipation of more defined mapping studies, the catalytic domain of the protease most likely maps in domain II of the U_L26 protease.

D. The function of the other domains of U_L26 protease.

[0151] The functions of the domains I, II and III are not known. Because the substrate, ICP35 aggregates to form the scaffolding of the HSV capsids, it is likely that the protease is also involved in the scaffolding and that at least domain III and possibly also I and IV are required to complex with ICP35.

Example 16

The U_L26 gene encodes a serine protease

[0152] The 20 amino acid CMV epitope described herein and the 256 amino acid IgG binding domain of protein A (plasmid Y, FIG. 1) were inserted between the terminal amino acid and the stop codon of U_L26 ORF. Transcripts of the coding domain of plasmid Y by the Sp6 RNA polymerase were translated in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate in the presence of [³⁵S]-methionine for 10 min. The cycloheximide was added to stop further translation and, the translation product of the Y plasmid was incubated for another 6 hours to allow self-cleavage in the presence of protease inhibitors. The products of the reaction were then electrophoretically separated on denaturing polyacrylamide gels. Autoradiographic images of the electrophoretically separated polypeptides translated *in vitro* in a nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate from the synthetic RNAs transcribed *in vitro* off the U_L26 ORF cloned in plasmid construct Y are shown in FIG. 17. The lanes shown represent portions denatured for electrophoresis immediately after the 10 minute synthesis (lane 15, 28) or after an additional 6 hours of reaction in the presence of cycloheximide (100µg/ml) alone or

with protease inhibitors (μM) shown (lanes 1-4, 16-27, and 29-47). All the protease inhibitors were dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) prior to use.

The results (FIG. 17) were as follows:

[0153]

(1) The products of the 10 minute translation formed a single labeled polypeptide band containing the uncleaved protease (Pra) (lanes 15 and 28).

(2) After six hours of reaction in the presence of cycloheximide (100 $\mu\text{g/ml}$) but in the absence of protease inhibitors, the translation mixture formed three bands corresponding to the intact translation product (Pra), the amino terminal (Prb), and the carboxyl terminal (PA) portions of the cleavage products of the translation (lanes 9, 10, 21, 22, and 33).

(3) The amounts of cleavage products, Prb and PA were reduced in translation mixtures reacted in the presence of cycloheximide and the lower concentrations of the serine protease inhibitors diisopropyl fluorophosphate (DFP, Sigma, St. Louis, MI), L-1-tosylamido-2-phenylethyl chloromethyl ketone (TPCK, Sigma), *N*- α -p-tosyl-L-lysine chloromethyl ketone (TLCK, Sigma), phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride (PMSF, Sigma), and chymostatin (Boehringer Mannheim, Indianapolis, IN). At the highest concentrations tested the digestion products were not detected (lane 1, 29, 34, 39, and 44). (4) The cleavage of the translation product (Pra) was not affected by the cysteine protease inhibitors iodoacetic acid (Sigma) and cystatin (Boehringer Mannheim; lanes 5-9, 22-27), by ethyleneglycol-bis (β -aminoethyl ether), N, N, N', N'-tetraacetic acid (EGTA), a chelator and inhibitor of metalloprotease (lanes 12-14), or by the aspartic acid protease inhibitor pepstatin (Boehringer Mannheim; lanes 15-21).

[0154] These results are consistent with the hypothesis that U_L26 gene product is a serine protease.

Example 17

Detection of a Candidate Inhibitor Substance

[0155] In still further embodiments, the present disclosure concerns a method for identifying new herpes viral protease inhibitory compounds, which may be termed as "candidate substances." It is contemplated that this screening technique will prove useful in the general identification of any compounds that will serve the purpose of inhibiting the herpes protease. It is further contemplated that useful compounds in this regard will in no way be limited to proteinaceous or peptidyl compounds. In fact, it may prove to be the case that the most useful pharmacologic compounds for identification through application of the screening assay will be non-peptidyl in nature and, e.g., which will be recognized and bound by the enzyme, and serve to inactivate the enzyme through a tight binding or other chemical interaction.

[0156] Thus, in these embodiments, the present invention is directed to a method for determining the ability of a candidate substance to inhibit the protease encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame, the method including generally the steps of:

(a) obtaining a composition comprising a herpes protease that is capable of cleaving its own amino acid sequence, or cleaving the ICP35 protein or any amino acid sequence containing the cleavage site for this protease;

(b) admixing a candidate substance with the protease composition; and

(c) determining the ability of the protease to effect cleavage in the presence of the candidate substance.

[0157] An important aspect of the candidate substance screening assay hereof is the ability to prepare a protease composition in a relative purified form, for example, in a manner as discussed herein. This is an important aspect of the candidate substance screening assay in that without at least a relatively purified preparation, one will not be able to assay specifically for protease inhibition, as opposed to the effects of the inhibition upon other substances in the extract which then might affect the protease. In any event, the successful isolation of the protease now allows for the first time the ability to identify new compounds which can be used for inhibiting this herpes related protein.

[0158] The candidate screening assay is quite simple to set up and perform, and is related in many ways to the assay discussed above for determining protease activity. This, after obtaining a relatively purified preparation of the protease, one will desire to simply admix a candidate substance with the protease preparation, preferably under conditions

which would allow the protease to perform its cleavage function but for inclusion of a inhibitory substance. Thus, for example, one will typically desire to include within the admixture an amount of a known protease substrate such as the amino acid sequence coded by the U_L26.5 coding sequence or at least the cleavage site at which the protease cleaves ICP35 c, d into e and f. In this fashion, one can measure the ability of the candidate substance to reduce or alter cleavage of the herpes protease substrate relatively in the presence of the candidate substance.

[0159] Accordingly, one will desire to measure or otherwise determine the activity of the relatively purified protease in the absence of the assayed candidate substance relative to the activity in the presence of the candidate substance in order to assess the relative inhibitory capability of the candidate substance.

[0160] In still further embodiments, the present disclosure is concerned with a method of inhibiting a protease which includes subjecting the protease to an effective concentration of a protease inhibitor such as one of the family of peptidyl compounds discussed above, or with a candidate substance identified in accordance with the candidate screening assay embodiments. This is, of course, an important aspect in that it is believed that by inhibiting the herpes protease, one will be enabled to treat various aspects of herpes infections. It is believed that the use of such inhibitors to block the action of the protease to produce capsid proteins will serve to treat or palliate the infection, and may be useful by themselves or in conjunction with other herpes therapies.

1. Markers (Tracers)

[0161] Two monoclonal antibodies were used as markers (tracers), one to a stationary epitope encoded by both U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frames and one reactive with a "movable epitope." The latter was an indispensable tool in the identification of the products of the two open reading frames, in the determination of the function of the proteins, and in mapping of the cleavage site. Without the "movable epitope," analysis would depend solely on radioactive tracers or monoclonal antibodies to oligopeptides corresponding to various domains of the genes. The movable epitope offers instant antibody to the product of any open reading frame and, when used in the context of the present invention, it enormously facilitated identification of the function of the product of the gene into which it has been inserted.

[0162] By inserting the coding sequence of an epitope reactive with a cytomegalovirus monoclonal antibody and homologs of the IgG binding domain of staphylococcus protein A into the 3' termini of the coding domains of the two open reading frames, the products of the protease cleavage were identified, the cleaved protease, designated *Prb*, and ICP e and f. It was also determined by this methodology that the cleavage site for the ICP35 proteins and that separating the total protease sequence into *Pra* and *Prb*, is approximately 20 amino acids from the carboxyl termini of both the protease and the ICP precursor.

[0163] As an example of the investigation of the herpes genome using plasmids with markers, the effect of one of the marker-inserted plasmids, S (FIG. 1), used to transfect cells with a portion of the herpes genome is illustrative. In this plasmid the CMV epitope was inserted at the carboxyl terminus of the sequence of ICP35. The cells infected with a portion of the herpes genome in this fashion were then collected and disrupted so that proteins within the cells could be analyzed. These proteins were then electrophoretically separated by molecular weight into bands. ICP35 is immunologically identifiable by the HSV antibody. The CMV epitope was sought among the bands by applying the antibody to the epitope and detecting a signal indicating the production of an antigen-antibody complex. Results of this immunological analysis showed that the CMV epitope was detected in bands c and d, but not in e and f. This indicated that cleavage of the carboxyl terminus of c and d had taken place to form e and f.

2. Cell Free Protein Synthesis

[0164] Another useful technique was a cell free protein synthesizing system. RNA's corresponding to the mRNA'S of U_L26 and U_L26.5 were transcribed by Sp6 RNA polymerase and translated in nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysates, a cell-free, "ribosome machine." The proteins translated in cell free systems *in vitro* were labelled with radioactive labels, separated by gel electrophoresis, and subjected to autoradiography to locate the band containing labels. There were two sets of experiments using this general methodology:

(i) Incubation of the translation products of the U plasmid in the presence of cycloheximide which resulted in gradual accumulation of the cleavage product (*Prb*) of the U_L26 protein. The amount of accumulated cleavage product was proportional to the duration of the incubation (FIG. 12, lanes 12-15).

(ii) Identical results were obtained with the translation products of plasmid V (lanes 4-7). The significance of this experiment stems from the presence of the CMV epitope at the carboxyl terminus of U_L26. As expected, the translation product *Pra* of U_L26 made from plasmid V migrated more slowly than the authentic protein derived from plasmid U. However, the processed form *Prb* of U_L26 synthesized from plasmid V comigrated with that of the authentic protein from plasmid U, indicating that the U_L26 autoprocessing involves carboxyl terminal proteolytic cleavage.

3. HSV-1(F), a Temperature Sensitive Mutant

[0165] Another tool used in the analysis of the HSV genome was HSV-1(F), a temperature sensitive mutant which at 39°C does not express its own U_L26 and U_L26.5 open reading frame. Rather, HSV-1(F) at the non-permissive temperature induces α -gene promoters (Post et al., 1981) and expresses primarily the α type genes.

4. Identification and Use of Protease Inhibition

[0166] If the action of the protease is inhibited, the capsid cannot be produced and the virus will not be replicated. This inhibition may be either at the level of transcription, translation, or protein action. Interference with transcription would necessitate interference with mRNA formation on a DNA template. Interference with translation would necessitate interfering with the synthesis of proteins on the mRNA template. Alternatively, the action of the protease may itself be disrupted either by destroying the structure of the protease, in particular its proteolytic module, altering the cleavage site of its substrate, or binding the protease to irreversible inhibitors.

[0167] Specifically designed peptides which block the function of the protease are extremely valuable in preventing and treating herpes infections. Embodiments of these blockers include any substrate analogues or serine protease inhibitor, e.g., oligopeptides or their derivatives which contain the amino acid sequence of the cleavage site recognized by the protease. Methods for identifying suitable protease inhibitors from candidate substances are disclosed in Example 17.

[0168] It is an additional object of the present disclosure to provide a ready means for producing the viral protease for use in detecting inhibitors, to develop treatment modalities, to develop antibodies for detection of viral infection, and to develop inactive mutants of the protease.

[0169] An exemplary embodiment for preparing the protease protein is to prepare a nucleic acid segment which includes a nucleic acid sequence capable of encoding the desired protease protein or polypeptide. This segment may be that which encodes the entire protease or only some portion of it, for example, the proteolytic domain of the protease. The segment may be as small as that capable of triggering a positive signal with an antibody, thereby, identifying the presence of a viral infection. Segments functionally equivalent to those shown in FIG. 1, which were developed in the present invention, may also be selected depending on the desired polypeptide to be produced. Functional equivalence may be determined by testing whether the segment can cleave either the ICP35 precursor or the *Pr* protease, for example, using techniques disclosed herein to detect protease inhibitors from among candidate substances.

[0170] The nucleic acid segment selected is transferred into an environment appropriate for expression of the segment as a polypeptide. This environment may be a vessel containing a mixture capable of inducing expression, e.g., a rabbit reticulocyte lysate. Alternatively, the segment may be transferred to a host cell by transformation, transfection via a recombinant expression vector, electroporation, or a "gene gun." The host cell may be selected from BHK cells, Vero, Hela, E. coli, and the like.

[0171] The recombinant expression vector may include a promoter. Embodiments of promoters are the α 4 promoter, the native promoter of U_L26.5, and any other prokaryotic or eukaryotic promoters.

[0172] In another embodiment, the nucleic acid segment may be prepared by obtaining genomic nucleic acids from herpes cells, amplifying a proteolytic site-conserved nucleic acid sequence region within the genomic nucleic acids, preparing recombinant clones which include said amplifying nucleic acid sequences, and selecting clones which comprise the desired amplified nucleic acid sequence.

[0173] The viral protease may also be prepared by obtaining a sample which contains the protease, homogenizing the sample, and fractionating the homogenate to obtain a protease fraction. Samples which contain the protease will include biological samples, for instance, virally infected tissues.

5. Treatment of Herpes Infections

[0174] Treatment modalities contemplated include topical and systemic medicants. For dermal and epidermal lesions, creams, ointments or sprays containing a protease inhibitor, are contemplated. Alternatively, systemic treatment by intravenous injection or ingestion is envisioned to prevent the deleterious outbreak of viral replication due to reactivation of latent viral inhabitants of host cells.

6. Virus and Cells

[0175] The properties of HSV-1(F) and HSV-2(G), the prototype HSV-1 and HSV-2 strains, respectively, used in this invention, and the maintenance and propagation of the thymidine kinase minus baby hamster kidney (BHK) cells have been described previously and are incorporated herein by reference (Arsenakis et al., 1986; Ejercito et al., 1968; Roizman and Spear, 1968).

7. Monoclonal Antibodies

[0176] Monoclonal antibody H725 and CH28-2 to ICP35 and CMV glycoprotein B, respectively, have been described previously (Braun et al., 1983, 1984; see also Zweig, 1980, Liu and Roizman, 1991). The monoclonal antibody H725 reacts with ICP35 of HSV-1 but not with HSV-2 proteins (Braun et al., 1983, 1984). CH28-2 was obtained from L. Pereira (Liu and Roizman, 1991a; Braun et al., 1984). As a substitute, any commercial antibodies for any known epitope may be used. CH28-2 is a monoclonal antibody directed against human cytomegalovirus (CMV) glycoprotein B. The epitope of this antibody has been mapped to a 20-amino-acid peptide, N-KGQKP^NLLDRLRHRKNGYRH-C, by assaying the reactivity of a series of overlapping peptides synthesized according to the predicted nucleotide sequence of the protein.

8. *In Vitro* Transcription and Translation

[0177] 5 µg of Plasmid DNA templates linearized with *Eco*RI or *Hind*III were prepared and transcribed in the presence of cap analog GppG (New England Biolabs, MA) with Sp6 or T7 RNA polymerase as recommended by Promega Biotec, Madison, WI. One µg amounts of the RNAs were translated for ten minutes in 50 µl reaction mixtures containing nuclease-treated rabbit reticulocyte lysate (Promega Biotec, WI) and [³⁵S]-methionine (Dupont, NEN Research Product), and the translation was then terminated either by the addition of a disruption buffer (0.05M Tris pH 7.0, 8.5% vol/vol sucrose, 5% vol/vol β-mercaptoethanol, and 2% vol/vol sodium dodecyl sulfate) or by 20 fold dilution in phosphate-buffered saline containing cycloheximide (100 µg/ml final concentration) and various concentrations of protease inhibitors. After 6 hrs of reaction in the presence of cycloheximide the mixtures were denatured in disruption buffer, subjected to electrophoresis in polyacrylamide gels, electrically transferred to nitrocellulose sheets as described herein (see also Liu and Roizman, 1991 and Braun, 1984) and exposed to Kodak X-Omat films.

9. Transfections and Superinfection of Cells Transfected With Plasmid DNAs

[0178] Transfections were done as described by Kristie and Roizman (1984) except that wells were generally transfected with 10 µg of plasmid DNA. 6-well Costar (Cambridge, Mass.) dish cultures of BHK cells contained approximately 10⁶ cells per well. In most experiments, the transfected cells were exposed 18 to 20 hours post transfection to 10 pfu of HSV-1(F) or HSV-2(G) per cell as stated in the Results. After 2 hours of exposure of cells to virus at 10°C, the inoculum was replaced with Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum and the cells were incubated at 34°C, 37°C, or 39°C for 20 hours. In the experiments which did not involve viral infection, the cells were harvested 40-42 hours post transfection. At 20 hr. postinfection, cells were labelled for 2 hr with 50 µCi of ³⁵S methionine in 1 ml of medium (199 without methionine supplemented with 1% calf serum). The harvested cells were washed once with phosphate-buffered saline, pelleted by centrifugation at about 4,000 rpm for 5 min in a SS34 Sorvall rotor spun in a DuPont centrifuge, suspended in the disruption buffer, sonicated for 20 seconds in ice, and boiled for 1 minute before electrophoretic separation in denaturing gels (see also Liu and Roizman, 1991a and b; Ejercito et al., 1968).

10. Electrophoretic Separation and Staining of Infected Cell Proteins With Monoclonal Antibody

[0179] The denatured, solubilized polypeptides from cell lysates or *in vitro* translation were separated on 9.5% or 12% (vol/vol) SDS-polyacrylamide gels crosslinked with N,N'-diallyltartardiamide as described by Gibson and Roizman (1972, 1974), and Braun et al. (1984). The separated polypeptides from BHK cells were transferred electrically to nitrocellulose membranes and reacted in an enzyme-linked immunoassay with only anti-mouse IgG conjugated with horseradish peroxidase (Amersham, Arlington Heights, IL) or with this anti-mouse IgG in addition to the monoclonal antibodies H725 against HSV-1, ICP35 or CH28-2 against CMV epitope, as previously described (Braun et al., 1984). The gels containing the separated polypeptides translated from the reticulocyte lysate were dried and exposed to Kodak X-Omat film.

11. Isolation and S1 Analysis of Cytoplasmic RNA

[0180] Cytoplasmic RNA was purified as described previously by Jenkins and Howett (1984) from Vero cells mock infected or infected with 20 PFU of HSV-1(F) per cell and maintained for 12 h. HSV-1 DNA probe (0.02 pmol) was 5' end labeled with [³²P]ATP (Dupont, NEN Research Products), hybridized to 50 µg of total cytoplasmic RNA, digested with S1 nuclease, and separated on 7% polyacrylamide gels in the presence of 8 M urea (Jenkins and Howett, 1984).

12. Methods of Preparing the Proteins of the Present Disclosure

[0181] Recombinant vectors are useful both as a means for preparing quantities of the protease or ICP35 encoding DNA itself, or as a means for preparing the encoded proteins. It is contemplated that where proteins of the invention are made from recombinant means, one may employ either prokaryotic or eukaryotic expression systems.

[0182] Where expression of herpes nucleic acid segments in a eukaryotic host is contemplated, it may be desirable to employ a vector, such as a plasmid, that incorporates a eukaryotic origin of replication, as exemplified by vectors of the pCMV series, like pCMV4. Additionally, for the purposes of expression in eukaryotic systems, one will desire to position the protease or ICP35 encoding sequence adjacent to and under control of an effective eukaryotic promoter, such as an SV40 or CMV promoter. To bring a coding sequence under the control of a promoter, whether it be a eukaryotic or prokaryotic promoter, all that is generally needed is to position the 5' end of the transcription initiation site of the transcriptional reading frame of the protein between about 1 and about 50 nucleotides downstream of the promoter chosen.

[0183] Furthermore, where eukaryotic expression is contemplated, one will desire to incorporate into the transcriptional unit which includes the desired peptide or protein, an appropriate polyadenylation site (e.g. 5'-AATAAA-3'). Typically, the poly A site is placed about 30 to 2000 nucleotides "downstream" of the termination site of the protein at a position prior to transcription termination.

[0184] Useful eukaryotic vectors which include all of the foregoing, and into which the herpes genes of the present invention can be inserted with little difficulty are well known. For example, suitable vectors include pCD and pCMV, with the most preferred system being pCMV. In addition to pCD and pCMV vectors, other preferred eukaryotic expression vectors include pMSG and pSVL from Pharmacia LKB Technology, Piscataway, N.J. These utilize the MMTV and SV40 late promoters, respectively. A cDNA incorporating the entire reading frames of the herpes protein, such as shown in FIG. 1, can be readily inserted into one of the foregoing vectors via the HindIII restriction site (AAGCTT) "upstream" of (i.e. 5' of) the initiation codon (ATG) that begins translation of the encoded ICP35 precursor.

[0185] It is contemplated that virtually any of the commonly employed eukaryotic host cells can be used in connection with herpes gene expression in accordance herewith. Examples include lines typically employed for eukaryotic expression such as AtT-20, HepG2, VERO, HeLa, CHO, WI 38, BHK, COS-7 RIN and MDCK cell lines. A preferred line for use in eukaryotic expression embodiments of the present invention is the BHK system.

[0186] Prokaryotic expression is an alternative which can be employed where desired. Although not required, where prokaryotic expression is envisioned, one will generally desire to employ a transcriptional unit which incorporates a reading frame corresponding only to the desired peptide itself, represented by embodiments in FIG. 1, so that further processing will not be required. Typically, prokaryotic promoters which may be employed include P_L, T7 and lac promoter, with T7 being generally preferred. Other preferred bacterial expression vectors include plasmid PKK233-2 and PKK233-3, available from Pharmacia LKB Technology. These utilize the *tac* and *trc* promoters, respectively.

[0187] Of course, even where a eukaryotic hook-up and expression is used, one will nevertheless desire to include a prokaryotic origin of expression, as well as selective markers operable in prokaryotic systems, to allow "shutting" of sequences from construction in prokaryotic to expression in eukaryotes.

[0188] In certain embodiments, one may desire to simply prepare herpes proteins or peptides in accordance with the present invention by non-recombinant synthetic means, such as by chemical synthesis of peptides or cell-free ribosomal "machine". Suitable peptide synthesizers are commercially available (Applied Biosystems), and may be employed.

[0189] In certain embodiments of the invention it is contemplated that DNA fragments both shorter and longer which incorporate sequences from FIG. 1 will find additional utilities, including uses in the preparation of short active peptides or even as short DNA fragment hybridization probes, e.g., in screening clone banks. In any event, fragments corresponding to the FIG. 1 sequence for stretches of as short as 14-20 or so nucleotides, will find utility in accordance with these or other embodiments. By having stretches of at least about 14 nucleotides in common with the nucleic acid segments of FIG. 1, or their complements, a DNA segment will have the ability to form a preferential hybrid with herpes species DNA, particularly under more stringent conditions such as 0.15M NaCl and 0.02M sodium citrate pH 7.4 at 50°C.

While a complementary or common stretch of about 14 or so nucleotides will ensure the ability to form a stable hybrid, longer stretches of complementarity may prove more desirable for certain uses. Thus, one may desire for certain uses DNA segments incorporating longer stretches of complementarity, for example, on the order of 18, 22 or even 25 or so bases.

13. Antibodies Against the Proteins of the Present Disclosure

[0190] In other embodiments, the disclosure concerns the preparation of antibodies to the herpes protease and species derived therefrom, either recombinant or non-recombinantly prepared. For example, it is contemplated that antibodies prepared against the herpes protease of FIG. 1, or other non-human species such as bovine or porcine, will

have certain advantages over antibodies prepared against the human species, particularly in embodiments where an immuno-binding of reduced strength is desired.

[0191] Compositions which include monoclonal antibodies of the present invention may be prepared by first fusing spleen cells of a rodent with myeloma cells from the same rodent species, wherein the rodent providing the spleen cells has been immunized with the herpes peptide, precursor, or related peptides. The rodent species utilized will generally be a mouse, particularly where one seeks to make an antibody against the herpes protease of FIG. 1. Of course, where a protease is prepared which incorporates structural variations over the one will likely be able to successfully employ a hybridoma system according to the species of interest.

[0192] In addition, the present disclosure provides a method for isolating proteases from other species which may be found antigenically cross-reactive with that of HSV-1. This method includes preparing an immunoadsorbent material having attached thereto an antibody to the protease. Numerous immunoadsorbent materials are known to those skilled in the art and include, for example, Affi-Gel, Cn-Sephadex, protein A-Sepharose, and numerous other well known immunoadsorbent techniques. All such techniques are applicable to the present disclosure and should prove useful in the isolation of the immuno cross-reactive species (for a more complete listing, see Monoclonal Hybridoma Antibodies: Techniques and Applications, John G. Hurrell, ed., CRC Press, 1982, incorporated herein by reference).

[0193] Moreover, kits may be provided to allow for a clinical detection of the herpes protease, and related proteases, in a biologic sample. Such kits would include polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies having specificity for the protease or immunologically related protease, in combination with an immunodetection reagent. An immunodetection reagent is defined as any reagent for detecting or quantifying the formation of antibody/antigen complexes. Typical immunodetection reagents include the use of radiolabeled or enzyme-labeled antigens or antibodies. Techniques which incorporate labeled antibodies include, for example, RIA (radioimmunoassay) and ELISA (enzyme-linked immuno assay). However, numerous other techniques are known which may be employed in immunodetection kits. Patents which teach suitable techniques include, for example, U.S. Patents 4,446,232; 4,407,943; 4,399,299; and 4,54,233.

[0194] Thus, a typical herpes protease detection kit based on the ELISA technique could include the anti-herpes protease monoclonal antibody or purified protease antigen (where one seeks to detect circulating antibodies), and a second "immunodetection" antibody capable of specifically immunoreacting with the purified antigen or anti-protease antibody. The second antibody could have a color-generating enzymatic activity associated with it, for example, an attached peroxidase molecule. When a second "immunodetection" antibody is employed in this fashion, one will generally first form an immunocomplex between the biologic sample to be tested, for example, serum, plasma, urine or tissue samples, and the antibody. After forming such an immunocomplex, the immunodetection antibody is added to react quantitatively with protease-bound antibody. This complex formation is then quantitated through the calorimetric peroxidase assay.

[0195] An alternative to using the above double-antibody technique, one may incorporate the enzyme or radio-ligand directly on the anti-protease antibody, and quantification made directly with the use of this directly labeled antibody.

[0196] The foregoing type of kit and method is well known and can be viewed generally as including the steps of obtaining a biologic sample from a patient, contacting the biologic sample with anti-herpes protease monoclonal antibody under conditions which will promote the formation of antibody/antigen complexes and detecting the formation of a specific immunologic reaction between the monoclonal antibody and the sample.

[0197] Neutralizing antibodies are also contemplated which, when bound to the protease or a segment thereof, render the proteolytic capability of the protease non-functional.

14. Host Cell Cultures and Vectors

[0198] In general, prokaryotes are preferred for the initial cloning of DNA sequences and constructing the vectors useful in the invention. For example, *E. coli* K12 strain 294 (ATCC No. 314460) is particularly useful. Other microbial strains which may be used include *E. coli* strains such as *E. coli* B, and *E. coli* X 1776 (ATCC No. 31537). These examples are, intended to be illustrative rather than limiting.

[0199] Prokaryotes may also be used for expression. The aforementioned strains, as well as *E. coli* W3110 (F-, lambda-, prototrophic, ATCC No. 27325), bacilli such as *Bacillus subtilis*, or other enterbacteriaceae such as *Salmonella typhimurium* or *Serratia marcescens*, and various *Pseudomonas* species may be used.

[0200] In general, plasmid vectors containing replicon and control sequences which are derived from species compatible with the host cell are used in connection with these hosts. The vector ordinarily carries a replication site, as well as marking sequences which are capable of providing phenotypic selection in transformed cells. For example, *E. coli* is typically transformed using PBR322, a plasmid derived from an *E. coli* species pBR 322 contains genes for ampicillin and tetracycline resistance and thus provides easy means for identifying transformed cells. The PBR plasmid, or other microbial plasmid or phage must also contain, or be modified to contain, promoters which can be used by the microbial organism for expression of its own proteins.

[0201] The promoters most commonly used in recombinant DNA construction include the B-lactamase (penicilli-

nase) and lactose promoter systems and a tryptophan (trp) promoter system. While these are the most commonly used, other microbial promoters have been discovered and utilized, and details concerning their nucleotide sequences have been published, enabling a skilled worker to ligate them functionally with plasmid vectors.

[0202] In addition to prokaryotes, eukaryotic microbes, such as yeast cultures may also be used. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, or common baker's yeast is the most commonly used among eukaryotic microorganisms, although a number of other strains are commonly available. For expression in *Saccharomyces*, the plasmid Yrp7, for example, is commonly used. This plasmid already contains the *trp1* gene which provides a selection marker for a mutant strain of yeast lacking the ability to grow in tryptophan, for example ATCC No. 44076 or PEP4-1. The presence of the *trp1* lesion as a characteristic of the yeast host cell genome then provides an effective environment for detecting transformation by growth in the absence of tryptophan.

[0203] Suitable promoting sequences in yeast vectors include the promoters for 3-phosphoglycerate kinase or other glycolytic enzymes, such as enolase, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, hexokinase, pyruvate decarboxylase, phosphofructokinase, glucose-6-phosphate isomerase, 3-phosphoglycerate mutase, pyruvate kinase, triose-phosphate isomerase, phosphoglucose isomerase, and glucokinase. In constructing suitable expression plasmids, the termination sequences associated with these genes are also ligated into the expression vector 3' of the sequence desired to be expressed to provide polyadenylation of the mRNA termination. Other promoters, which have the additional advantage of transcription controlled by growth conditions are the promoter region for alcohol dehydrogenase 2, isocytochrome C, acid phosphatase, degradative enzymes associated with nitrogen metabolism, and the aforementioned glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, and enzymes responsible for maltose and galactose utilization. Any plasmid vector containing a yeast-compatible promoter, origin of replication and termination sequences is suitable.

[0204] In addition to microorganisms, cultures of cells derived from multicellular organisms may also be used as hosts. In principle, any such cell culture is workable, whether from vertebrate or invertebrate culture. However, interest has been greatest in vertebrate cells, and propagation of vertebrate cells in culture (tissue culture) has become a routine procedure in recent years. Examples of such useful host cell lines are AtT-20 VERO and HeLa cells, Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell lines, and W138, BHK, COS-7 293 and MDCK cell lines. Expression vectors for such cells ordinarily include (if necessary) an origin of replication, a promoter located in front of the gene to be expressed, along with any necessary ribosome binding sites, RNA splice sites, polyadenylation site, and transcriptional terminator sequences.

[0205] For use in mammalian cells, the control functions on the expression vectors are often provided by viral material. For example, commonly used promoters are derived from polyoma, Adenovirus 2, Cytomegalovirus and most frequently Simian Virus 40 (SV40). The early and late promoters of SV40 virus are particularly useful because both are obtained easily from the virus as a fragment which also contains the SV40 viral origin of replication. Smaller or larger SV40 fragments may also be used, provided there is included the approximately 250 bp sequence extending from the Hind III site toward the Bg1 site located in the viral origin of replication. Further, it is also possible, and often desirable, to utilize promoter or control sequences normally associated with the desired gene sequence, provided such control sequences are compatible with the host cell systems.

[0206] An origin of replication may be provided either by construction of the vector to include an exogenous origin, such as may be derived from SV40 or other viral (e.g., Polyoma, Adeno, HSV, BPV, CMV source, or may be provided by the host cell chromosomal replication mechanism. If the vector is integrated into the host cell chromosome, the latter is often sufficient.

15. Nucleic Acid Hybridization to Detect the Sequences Capable of Coding for the Serine Proteases, the ICP35 Proteins or their Biologically Functional Equivalents.

[0207] The nucleic acid sequence information provided by the invention allows for the preparation of relatively short DNA (or RNA) sequences having the ability to specifically hybridize to gene sequences capable of coding for at least the proteolytic domain of the proteases or the cleavage site of the ICP35 proteins. In these aspects, nucleic acid probes of an appropriate length are prepared based on a consideration of the sequence shown in FIG. 1. The ability of such nucleic acid probes to specifically hybridize to the proteases or ICP35 gene sequences lend them particular utility in a variety of embodiments. Most importantly, the probes can be used in a variety of assays for detecting the presence of complementary sequences in a given sample. Other uses are envisioned, including the use of the sequence information for the preparation of mutant species primers, or primers for use in preparing other genetic constructions.

[0208] To provide certain of the advantages in accordance with the invention, the preferred nucleic acid sequence employed for hybridization studies or assays includes sequences that are complementary to at least a 14 base nucleotide stretches of the sequence shown in FIG. 1. A size of at least 14 nucleotides in length helps to ensure that the fragment will be of sufficient length to form a duplex molecule that is both stable and selective. Such fragments may be readily prepared by, for example, directly synthesizing the fragment by chemical means, by application of nucleic acid reproduction technology, such as the PCR technology of U.S. Patent 4,603,102, or by introducing selected sequences

into recombinant vectors for recombinant production. Segments of from 18 to 25, or even 30 to 40 bases, all the way up to sizes large enough to encode a complete gene or genes, are also within the scope of this invention.

[0209] Accordingly, the nucleotide sequences of the invention are important for their ability to selectively form duplex molecules with complementary stretches of the gene. Depending on the application envisioned, varying conditions of hybridization may be employed to achieve varying degree of selectivity of the probe toward the target sequence. For applications requiring a high degree of selectivity, relatively stringent conditions may be employed to form the hybrids, for example, selecting relatively low salt and/or high temperature conditions, such as provided by 0.02M-0.15M NaCl at temperatures of 50°C to 70°C. These conditions are particularly selective, and tolerate little, if any, mismatch between the probe and the template or target strand.

[0210] Of course, for some applications, for example, preparation of mutants employing a mutant primer strand hybridized to an underlying template, or to isolate protease or ICP35 coding sequences from related species, functional equivalents, or the like, less stringent hybridization conditions are called for in order to allow formation of the heteroduplex. In these circumstances, conditions employed would be, e.g., such as 0.15M-0.9M salt, at temperatures ranging from 20°C to 55°C. Cross-hybridizing species can thereby be readily identified as positively hybridizing signals with respect to control hybridizations. In any case, it is generally appreciated that conditions can be rendered more stringent by the addition of increasing amounts of formamide, which serves to destabilize the hybrid duplex in the same manner as increased temperature. Thus, hybridization conditions can be readily manipulated, and thus will generally be a method of choice depending on the desired results.

[0211] In certain embodiments, it will be advantageous to employ nucleic acid sequences of the present invention in combination with an appropriate means, such as a label, for determining hybridization. A wide variety of appropriate indicator means are known in the art, including radioactive, enzymatic or other ligands, such as avidin/biotin, which are capable of giving a detectable signal. In preferred diagnostic embodiments, an enzyme tag such as urease, alkaline phosphatase or peroxidase, may be employed instead of radioactive or other environmental undesirable reagents. In the case of enzyme tags, calorimetric indicator substrates are known which can be employed to provide a means visible to the human eye or spectrophotometrically, to identify specific hybridization with complementary nucleic acid-containing samples.

[0212] In general, it is envisioned that the hybridization probes described herein will be useful both as reagents in solution hybridization as well as in embodiments employing a solid phase. In embodiments involving a solid phase, the test DNA (or RNA) is adsorbed or otherwise affixed to a selected matrix or surface. This fixed, single-stranded nucleic acid is then subjected to specific hybridization with selected probes under desired conditions. The selected conditions will depend on the particular circumstances based on the particular criteria required (depending, for example, on the G+C contents, type of target nucleic acid, source of nucleic acid, size of hybridization probe, etc.). Following washing of the hybridized surface so as to remove nonspecifically bound probe molecules, specific hybridization is detected, or even quantified, by means of the label.

[0213] One method of making molecules for detection of cell extracts is to use fluorescent probes. Fluorescent probes are well known to those skilled in the art. An example of a method is to bind fluorescein-labeled avidin (Vector Laboratories, Burlingame, Ca) to a biotin-labeled protein. The signal may be enhanced.

[0214] The present invention has been described in terms of particular embodiments found or proposed by the present inventors to comprise preferred modes for the practice of the present invention. It will be appreciated by those of skill in the art that numerous modifications and changes can be made in the particular embodiments exemplified without departing from the invention as defined in the claims.

REFERENCES

[0215] The references listed below are incorporated herein by reference to the extent that they supplement, explain, provide a background for, or teach methodology, techniques, and/or compositions employed herein.

Arsenakis, M., Hubenthal-Voss, J., Campadelli-Fiume, G., Pereira, L., and Roizman, B. (1986), Construction and properties of a cell line constitutively expressing the herpes simplex virus glycoprotein B dependent on functional $\alpha 4$ protein synthesis. *J. Virol.* 60:674-682.

Batterson, W. and Roizman, B. (1983), Characterization of the herpes simplex virion-associated factor responsible for the induction of α genes. *J. Virol.* 46:371-377.

Braun, D.K., Pereira L., Norrild, B., and Roizman, B. (1983), Application of denatured, electrophoretically separated, and immobilized lysates of herpes simplex virus-infected cells for the detection of monoclonal antibodies and for studies of the properties of viral proteins. *J. Virol.*

46:103-112.

Braun, D.K., Roizman, B., and Pereira, L. (1984),
 Characterization of post-transnational products of herpes simplex virus gene 35 proteins binding to the surfaces of
 5 full capsids but not empty capsids. *J. Virol.*, 49:142-153.

Chee, M.S., Bankier, A.T., Beck, S. et al. (1990),
Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, 154:127-169.

10 Corey, L. and Spear (1986), PG Infections with herpes simplex viruses. *N. Eng. J. Med.*, 314:686-691.

Davison, A.J. and McGeoch, D.J. (1986), Evolutionary comparisons of the S segments in the genomes of herpes
 simplex virus type 1 and varicellazoster virus. *J. Gen. Virol.*, 67:597-611.

15 Davison, A.J. and McGeoch, D.J. (1986), *J. Gen. Virol.*, 67:1759-1816.

Ejercito, P.M., Kieff, E.D., and Roizman, B. (1986),
 Characterization of herpes simplex virus strains differing in their effect on social behavior of infected cells. *J. Gen.
 Virol.*, 2:357-364.

20 Gibson, W., Marcy, A.I., Comolli, J.C., and Lee, J. (1990), Identification of precursor to cytomegalovirus capsid
 assembly protein and evidence that processing results in loss of its carboxyl-terminal end. *J. Virol.*, 64:1241-1249.

25 Gibson, W., and Roizman, B. (1972), Proteins specified by herpes simplex virus VIII. Characterization and compo-
 sition of multiple capsid forms of subtypes 1 and 2. *J. Virol.*, 10:1044-1052.

Gibson, W., and Roizman, B. (1974), Protein specified by herpes simplex virus. Staining and radiolabeling proper-
 ties of B capsids and virion proteins in polyacrylamide gels. *J. Virol.*, 13:155-165.

30 Jenkins et al. (1984), Characterization of the mRNAs mapping in the *Bp111* N fragment of the herpes simplex virus
 type 2 genome. *J. Virol.*, 52:99-107.

Kraut, J. (1977), *Annual Rev. Biochem.*, 46:331-358.

35 Kristie, T.M., and Roizman, B. (1984), Separation of sequences defining basal expressing from those conferring α
 gene recognition within the regulatory domains of herpes simplex virus 1 α genes. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*,
 81:4065-4069.

40 Kyte, J., et al. (1982), *J. Mol. Biol.*, 157:105-132.

Liu, F., and Roizman, B. (1991a), The promoter, transcriptional unit, and coding sequence of herpes simplex family
 35 proteins are contained within and in frame with the U_L26 open reading frame. *J. Virol.*, 65:206-212.

45 Liu, F., and Roizman, B. (1991b), *J. Virol.*, 65:5149-5156.

McGeoch, D.J., Dalrymple, M.A., Davison, A.J., Dolan, A., Frame, M.C., McNab, D., Perry, L.J., Scott, J.E., and Tay-
 lor, P. (1988), The complete DNA sequence of the long unique region in the genome of herpes simplex virus type
 1. *J. Gen. Virol.*, 69:1531-1574.

50 Morse, L. S., Pereira, L., Roizman, B. et al. (1978), Preparation of herpes simplex virus of high titer. *J. Virol.*, 2:83-
 84.

Neurath, H. (1983), *Science.*, 224:350-357.

55 Newcomb, W.W., and Brown, J.C. (1991), Structure of the herpes simplex virus capsid effects of extraction with
 guanidine hydrochloride and partial reconstitution of extracted capsids. *J. Virol.*, 65:613-620.

Newcomb, W.W., Brown, J.C., Booy, F.P., and Steven, A.C. (1989), Nucleocapsid mass and capsomere protein sto-

ichiometry in equine herpes virus 1: scanning transmission electron microscopic study. *J. Virol.*, 63:3777-3783.

Post, L.E., Mackern, S. and Roizman, B. (1981), The regulation of α genes of herpes simplex virus: expression of chimeric genes produced by fusion of thymidine kinase with α gene promoters. *Cell*, 24:555-565.

Preston, V.G., Coates, J.A.V., and Rixon, F.J. (1983), Identification and characterization of a herpes simplex virus gene product required for encapsodation of virus DNA. *J. Virol.*, 45:1056-1064.

Preston, V.G. (1992), Processing of the herpes simplex virus assembly protein ICP35 near its carboxy terminal end requires the product of the whole of the UL26 reading frame, *Virology*, 186:87-98.

Robson, L. and Gibson, W. (1989), Primate cytomegalovirus assembly protein: genome localization and nucleotide sequence. *J. Virol.*, 63:669-676.

Roizman, B., and Spear, P.ZG. (1968), Preparation of herpes simplex virus of high titer. *J. Virol.*, 65:1525-1529.

Sambrook, J., Fritsch, E.F. and Maniatis, T. (1989), Molecular cloning, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratories.

Schenk, P. et al. (1991), The 45-kilodalton protein of cytomegalovirus (Colburn) B-capsids is an amino-terminal extension form of the assembly protein. *J. Virol.*, 65:1525-1529.

Skalka, A.M. (1989), Retroviral Proteases: First glimpses at the anatomy of a processing machine. *Cell*, 58:911-913.

Welch, A.R. et al. (1991), A herpes virus maturational proteinase, assemblin: identification of the gene, putative active site domain, and cleavage site. *PNAS*, 88:10792-10796.

Claims

1. Use of the U_L26 open reading frame gene product of Herpes Simplex Virus 1 as a protease.
2. The use of Claim 1, wherein said product is a serine protease.
3. The use of Claim 1 or 2, wherein said product comprising an apparent molecular weight of approximately 75kd to 85kd as determined by SDS-PAGE gel electrophoresis.
4. The use of Claim 3, wherein said product is further being defined as migrating as essentially a single band after preparation in a reticulocyte lysate ribosome system, followed by SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and ³⁵S labelling, said band corresponding to an apparent molecular weight of approximately 75-85kd.
5. The use of a protein product comprising at least the domains II extending from approximately position 10 to 218 and III extending from approximately position 218 to 306 of the U_L26 open reading frame gene product as shown in Fig. 17 as a protease, whereby the protein product is not the entire U_L26 open reading frame gene product.
6. The use of claim 5 wherein said product is further identified as comprising an amino acid sequence of greater than 306-635 amino acids, and a protease cleavage site located about 18-25 amino acids from the carboxyl terminus.
7. The use of claim 5 or 6, wherein said product comprises four domains, said domains designated respectively I, II, III and IV, and said domains defined by amino acids sequences included within an amino acid sequence characterising the protease.
8. A method of cleaving a herpes molecule, said method comprising treating the molecule with a protease encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame.
9. Use of an inhibitor of the protease encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a herpes infection.

10. The use of claim 9, wherein the herpes infection involves herpes simplex virus type I.
11. A method for determining the ability of a candidate substance to modify the action of the protease encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame, said method comprising:-
 - a) preparing a protease encoded by the U_L26 open reading frame;
 - b) combining the protease with the candidate inhibitor substance in a reaction mixture;
 - c) introducing into the mixture a substrate capable of being cleaved by the protease; and
 - d) determining whether the candidate substance has modified the action of the protease on the substrate;
12. The method of claim 11, wherein the candidate substance comprises chymostatin, diisopropyl, fluorophosphate or phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride.
13. The method of claim 11 or 12, wherein the protease is prepared through the application of recombinant genetic technology.
14. The method of claim 13, wherein the protease is prepared by:
 - a) preparing an expression vector including at least a nucleic acid sequence encoding for the proteolytic domain of the entire protease;
 - b) placing the expression vector in an appropriate host cell under conditions which permit expression of the coding sequence; and
 - c) collecting the protease from the cell.
15. The method of any of claims 11-14, wherein it is determined whether the candidate substance has exerted any inhibitory effect upon the action of the protease on the substrate.

Patentansprüche

1. Verwendung des Genproduktes des offenen Leserahmens U_L26 des Herpes-Simplex-Virus 1 als eine Protease.
2. Die Verwendung nach Anspruch 1, wobei besagtes Produkt eine Serin-Protease ist.
3. Die Verwendung nach Anspruch 1 oder 2, wobei besagtes Produkt ein scheinbares Molekulargewicht von ungefähr 75kd bis 85kd umfaßt, bestimmt mit SDS-PAGE-Gelelektrophorese.
4. Die Verwendung nach Anspruch 3, wobei besagtes Produkt weiter dadurch definiert ist, daß es nach Herstellung in einem Reticulocytenlysosomensystem, gefolgt von SDS-Polyacrylamidgelelektrophorese und ³⁵S-Markierung, als im wesentlichen eine einzelne Bande wandert, wobei besagte Bande einem scheinbaren Molekulargewicht von ungefähr 75-85kd entspricht.
5. Die Verwendung eines Proteinproduktes, das wenigstens die Domäne II, die sich von ungefähr Position 10 bis 218 erstreckt, und die Domäne III, die sich von ungefähr Position 218 bis 306 erstreckt, des Genproduktes des offenen Leserahmens U_L26, wie dargestellt in Fig. 17, umfaßt, als eine Protease, wobei das Proteinprodukt nicht das vollständige Genprodukt des offenen Leserahmens U_L26 ist.
6. Die Verwendung nach Anspruch 5, wobei besagtes Produkt weiter dadurch identifiziert ist, daß es eine Aminosäuresequenz mit mehr als 306-635 Aminosäuren und eine Protease-Spaltstelle, die etwa 18-25 Aminosäuren vom Carboxylterminus angeordnet ist, umfaßt.
7. Die Verwendung nach Anspruch 5 oder 6, wobei besagtes Produkt vier Domänen umfaßt, wobei besagte Domänen mit I, II, III bzw. IV bezeichnet sind, und besagte Domänen durch Aminosäuresequenzen definiert sind, die in einer Aminosäuresequenz eingeschlossen sind, die die Protease charakterisiert.

8. Ein Verfahren zum Spalten eines Herpesmoleküls, wobei besagtes Verfahren das Behandeln des Moleküls mit einer Protease umfaßt, die durch den offenen Leserahmen U_L26 codiert wird.
9. Verwendung eines Inhibitors der Protease, die von dem offenen Leserahmen U_L26 codiert wird, zur Herstellung eines Arzneimittels zur Behandlung einer Herpes-Infektion.
10. Die Verwendung nach Anspruch 9, wobei die Herpes-Infektion Herpes-Simplex-Virus Typ I betrifft.
11. Ein Verfahren zur Bestimmung der Fähigkeit einer Kandidatensubstanz, die Wirkung der Protease zu modifizieren, die von dem offenen Leserahmen U_L26 codiert wird, wobei besagtes Verfahren umfaßt:
 - a) Herstellen einer Protease, die von dem offenen Leserahmen U_L26 codiert wird;
 - b) Zusammenbringen der Protease mit der Kandidateninhibitorsubstanz in einer Reaktionsmischung;
 - c) Einführen eines Substrates in die Mischung, das von der Protease gespalten werden kann; und
 - d) Bestimmen, ob die Kandidatensubstanz die Wirkung der Protease auf das Substrat modifiziert hat.
12. Das Verfahren nach Anspruch 11, wobei die Kandidatensubstanz Chymostatin, Diisopropylfluorophosphat oder Phenylmethansulfonylfluorid umfaßt.
13. Das Verfahren nach Anspruch 11 oder 12, wobei die Protease durch die Anwendung rekombinanter Gentechnologie hergestellt wird.
14. Das Verfahren nach Anspruch 13, wobei die Protease hergestellt wird, indem:
 - a) ein Expressionsvektor hergestellt wird, der wenigstens eine Nucleinsäuresequenz einschließt, die für die proteolytische Domäne der gesamten Protease codiert;
 - b) der Expressionsvektor unter Bedingungen, die die Expression der Codierungssequenz erlauben, in eine geeignete Wirtszelle gebracht wird; und
 - c) die Protease aus der Zelle gesammelt wird.
15. Das Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 11 bis 14, wobei bestimmt wird, ob die Kandidatensubstanz irgendeinen inhibitorischen Effekt auf die Wirkung der Protease auf das Substrat ausgeübt hat.

Revendications

1. Utilisation du produit génique à cadre de lecture ouvert U_L26 du virus Herpes Simplex 1 en tant que protéase.
2. Utilisation selon la revendication 1, dans laquelle ledit produit est une sérine protéase.
3. Utilisation selon la revendication 1 ou 2, dans laquelle ledit produit comprend un poids moléculaire apparent approximatif de 75 kD à 85 kD, tel que déterminé par électrophorèse sur gel SDS-PAGE.
4. Utilisation selon la revendication 3, dans laquelle ledit produit est en outre défini comme migrant pratiquement sous la forme d'une bande unique après préparation dans un système ribosomique de lysat de réticulocytes, suivie d'une électrophorèse sur gel de polyacrylamide - SDS et marquage au ³⁵S, ladite bande correspondant à un poids moléculaire apparent approximatif de 75 à 85 kD.
5. Utilisation d'un produit protéinique comprenant au moins les domaines II s'étendant approximativement des positions 10 à 218 et III s'étendant approximativement des positions 218 à 306 du produit génique à cadre de lecture ouvert U_L26 tel que représenté sur la Figure 17, à titre de protéase, en conséquence de quoi le produit protéinique n'est pas le produit génique à cadre de lecture ouvert U_L26 entier.
6. Utilisation selon la revendication 5, dans laquelle ledit produit est en outre identifié comme comprenant une

séquence d'acides aminés ayant plus de 306 à 635 acides aminés, et un site de coupure par une protéase situé à environ 18 à 25 acides aminés par rapport à l'extrémité terminale carboxyle.

- 5 7. Utilisation selon la revendication 5 ou 6, dans laquelle ledit produit comprend quatre domaines, lesdits domaines étant désignés respectivement I, II, III et IV, et lesdits domaines étant définis par des séquences d'acides aminés englobées à l'intérieur d'une séquence d'acides aminés caractérisant la protéase.
- 10 8. Procédé de coupure d'une molécule d'herpès, ledit procédé comprenant le traitement de la molécule avec une protéase codée par le cadre de lecture ouvert U_L26.
- 15 9. Utilisation d'un inhibiteur de la protéase codée par le cadre de lecture ouvert U_L26 pour la fabrication d'un médicament destiné au traitement d'une infection par herpès.
- 20 10. Utilisation selon la revendication 9, dans laquelle l'infection par herpès met en jeu le virus Herpes Simplex de type I.
- 25 11. Procédé pour déterminer l'aptitude d'une substance candidate à modifier l'action de la protéase codée par le cadré de lecture ouvert U_L26, ledit procédé comprenant :
 - a) la préparation d'une protéase codée par le cadre de lecture ouvert U_L26 ;
 - b) la combinaison de la protéase avec la substance inhibitrice candidate dans un mélange réactionnel ;
 - c) l'introduction dans le mélange d'un substrat susceptible d'être coupé par la protéase ; et
 - d) la détermination du fait que la substance candidate a ou non modifié l'action de la protéase sur le substrat.
- 30 12. Procédé selon la revendication 11, dans lequel la substance candidate comprend la chymostatine, le diisopropyle, un fluorophosphate ou le fluorure de phénylméthanesulfonyle.
- 35 13. Procédé selon la revendication 11 ou 12, dans lequel la protéase est préparée par l'application d'une technique de recombinaison génétique.
- 40 14. Procédé selon la revendication 13, dans lequel la protéase est préparée par :
 - a) préparation d'un vecteur d'expression comprenant au moins une séquence d'acides nucléiques codant le domaine protéolytique de la protéase entière ;
 - b) disposition du vecteur d'expression dans une cellule hôte appropriée dans des conditions qui permettent l'expression de la séquence codante ; et
 - c) recueil de la protéase à partir de la cellule.
- 45 15. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 11 à 14, dans lequel il est déterminé si la substance candidate a ou non exercé un quelconque effet inhibiteur sur l'action de la protéase sur le substrat.
- 50
- 55

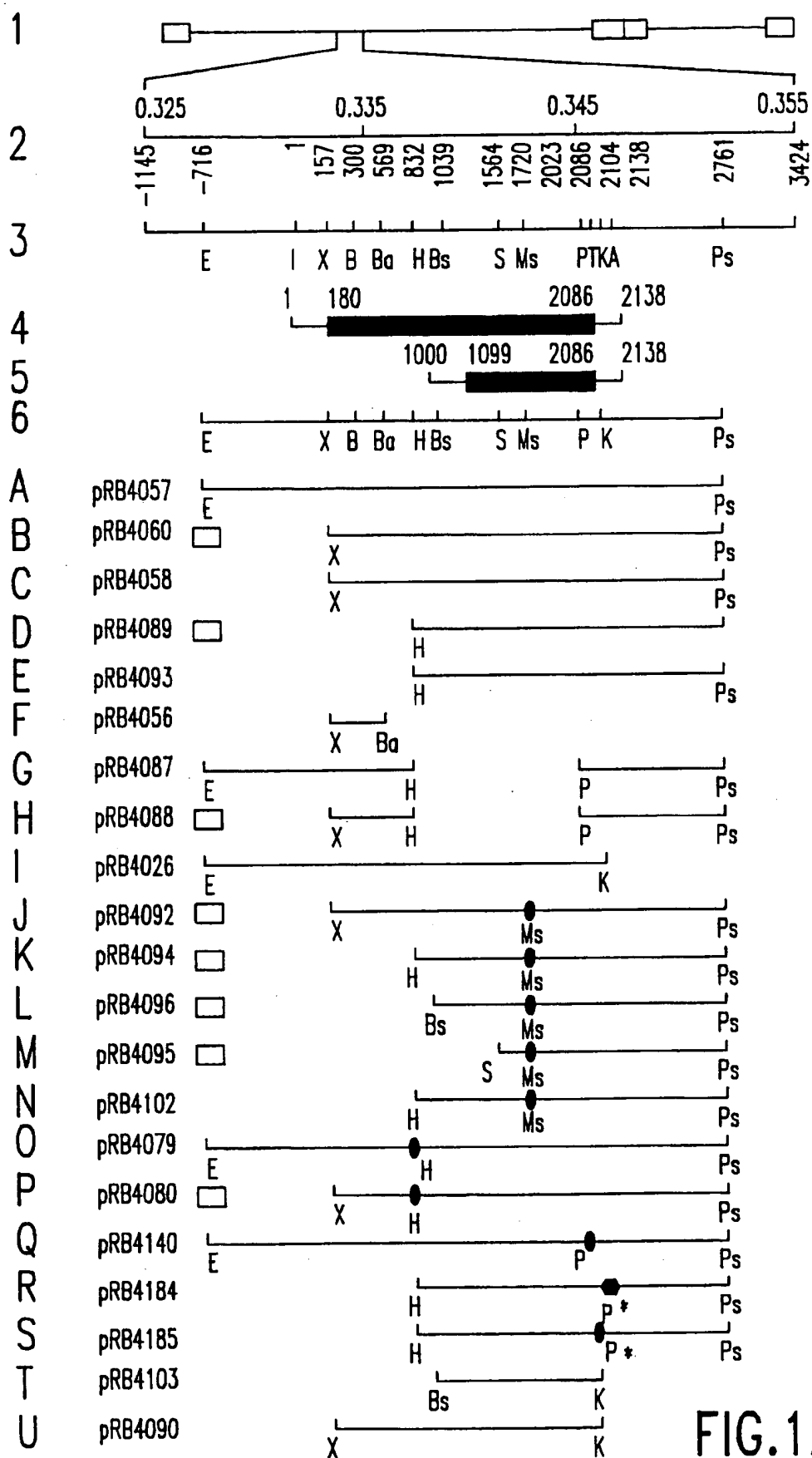


FIG.1A

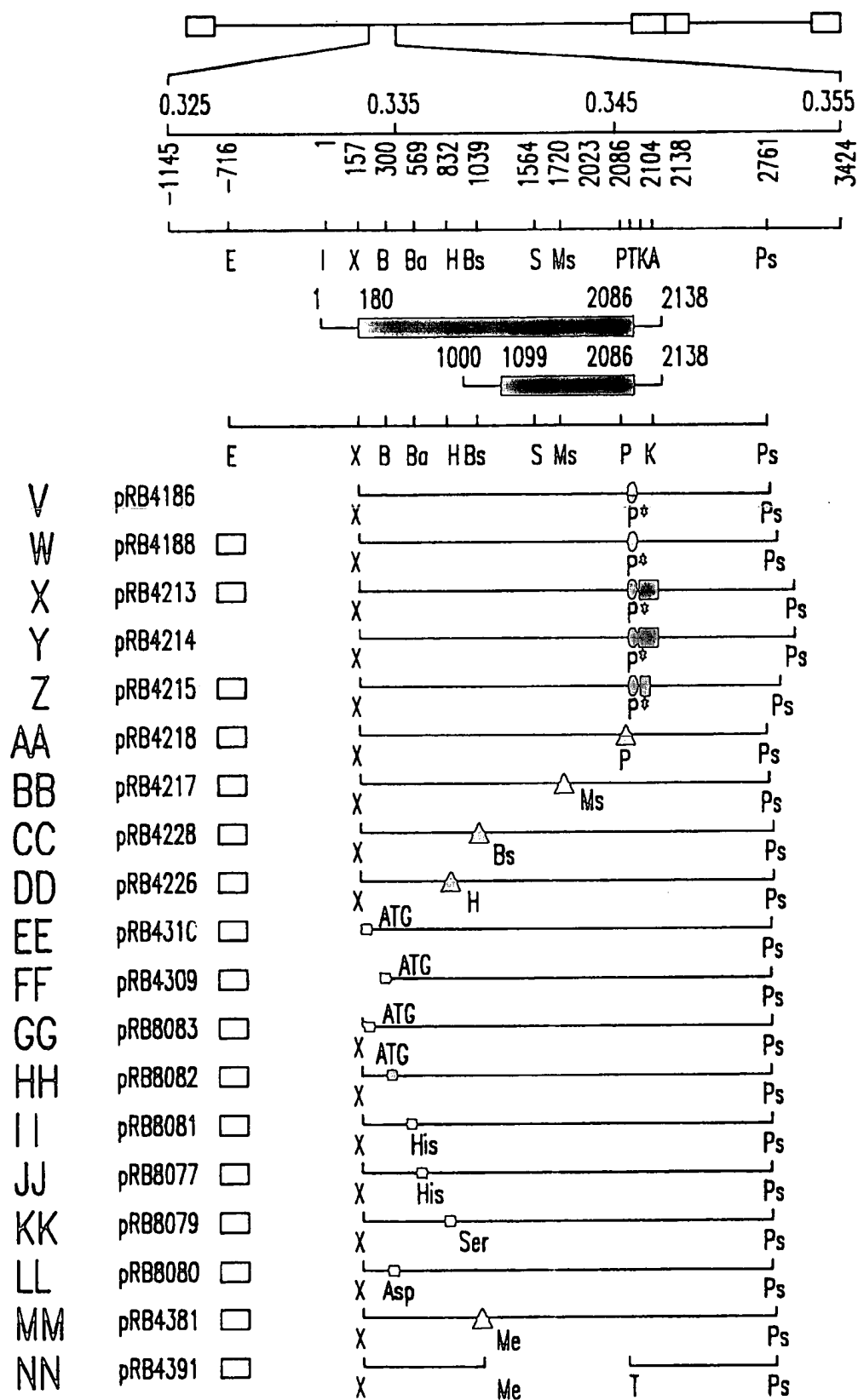


FIG.1A CONT.

```

MetAlaAlaAspAlaProGlyAspArgMetGluGluProLeuProAspArgAlaValPro
1  ATGGCAGCCGATGCCCCGGAGACCGGATGGAGAGCCCCCTGCCCGACAGGGCCGTGCCC
TACCGTCGGCTACGGGGCCCTCTGGCCTACCTCCTCGGGACGGGCTGTCCCCGGCACGGG

IleTyrValAlaGlyPheLeuAlaLeuTyrAspSerGlyAspSerGlyGluLeuAlaLeu
61  ATTTACGTGGCTGGGTTTTTTGGCCCTGTATGACAGCGGGACTCGGGCGAGTTGGCAATTG
TAAATGCACCGACCCAAACCGGACATACTCTGCCCTGAGCCCGCTCAACCCGTAAC

AspProAspThrValArgAlaAlaLeuProProAspAsnProLeuProIleAsnValAsp
121  GATCCGGATACGGTGGGGCGGCCCTGCCTCCGGATAACCCACTCCCGATTACGTGGAC
CTAGGCCTATGCCACGCCCGCGGGACGAGGCCCTATTGGGTGAGGGCTAATTGCACCTG

HisArgAlaGlyCysGluValGlyArgValLeuAlaValValAspAspProArgGlyPro
181  CACCGCGCTGCTCGAGGTGGGGCGGTGCTGGCCGTGGTCCGACACCCCGCGGCCG
GTGGCGGACCGACGCTCCACCCCGCCACGACCGGCCACGAGTGTGGGGGCGCCCCGGC

PhePheValGlyLeuIleAlaCysValGlnLeuGluArgValLeuGluThrAlaAlaSer
241  TTTTGTGGGCTGATCGCCTGCGTGCAGCTGGAGCGCGTCTCCTCGAGACGGCCCGCAGC
AAAAACACCCCCGACTAGCGGACCGCACCTCGACCTCGCGCAGGAGCTCTGCCGGCGGTGCG

AlaAlaIlePheGluArgArgGlyProProLeuSerArgGluGluArgLeuLeuTyrLeu
301  GCTGCGATTTTCGAGCGCCGCGCGCGCTCTCCGGGAGGAGCGCCTGTTGTACCTG
CGACGCTAAAGCTCGCGGCGCGCGCGGAGAGGCCCTCCTCGGGGACAAACATGGAC

```

FIG.1B(I)

IleThrAsnTyrLeuProSerValSerLeuAlaThrLysArgLeuGlyGlyGluAlaHis
 361 ATCAACCACTACCTGCCCTCGGTCTCCTGGCCACAAAGCCCTGGGGCGGAGCGGCAC
 TAGTGGTTGATGGACGGGAGCCAGAGGACCGGTGTTTTCGGAGCCCCCGCTCCGGCGTG

 ProAspArgThrLeuPheAlaHisValAlaLeuCysAlaIleGlyArgArgLeuGlyThr
 421 CCGGATCGCACGGCTGTTCCGGCACGTCGGCTGTGCGGATCGGGCGGCGCTCGGCACCT
 GGGCTAGCGTGGCACAAGCGCGCTCCAGCGGCACACGCGCTAGCCCCGCGGAGCCGTGA

 IleValThrTyrAspThrGlyLeuAspAlaAlaIleAlaProPheArgHisLeuSerPro
 481 ATCGTCACCTACGACACCGGTCTCCAGCCCGCCATCGCGGCCCTTCGCCACCTGTGCGCG
 TAGCAGTGGATGCTGTGGCCAGAGCTCGGGCGGTAGCGGGGAAGCGGTGGACAGCGCG

 AlaSerArgGluGlyAlaArgArgLeuAlaGluAlaGluLeuAlaLeuSerGlyArg
 541 GCGTCTCGCGAGGGCGGGCGGACTGGCGCGCCGAGCGCGAGCTCGCGCTGTCCGGGCGC
 CGCAGAGCGCTCCCCCGCGCGCTGACCGGGGCTCCGGGTCGAGCGCGACAGGCCCGCG

 ThrTrpAlaProGlyValGluAlaLeuThrHisThrLeuLeuSerThrAlaValAsnAsn
 601 ACCTGGGGCCCCCGGTGGAGCGGCTGACCCACACGCTGCTTCCACCGCGCTTAACAAC
 TGGACCCCGCGCGCCACCTCCGCGACTGGGTGTCCGACGAAAGGTGGCGCAATTGTTG

 MetMetLeuArgAspArgTrpSerLeuValAlaGluArgArgGlnAlaGlyIleAla
 661 ATGATGCTCGGGACCGCTGGAGCCTGGTGGCCGAGCGCGCGCGCAGCGCGGATCGCC
 TACTACGACGCCCTGGCGACCTCGGACCACCGGCTCGCGCGCGCTCGGGCCCTAGCGCG

FIG.1B (II)

GlyHisThrTyrLeuGlnAlaSerGluLysPheLysMetTrpGlyAlaGluProValSer
 721 GGACACACCTACCTCCAGGCCAGCAAAATTCAAAATGTGGGGGGCGGAGCCTGTTTCC
 CCTGTGTGATGGAGTCCGCTCGCTTTTAAAGTTTACACCCCCCGCCTCGGACAAAGG

 AlaProAlaArgGlyTyrLysAsnGlyAlaProGluSerThrAspIleProProGlySer
 781 GCGCCGGCGCGCGGTATAAGAACGGGGCCCCGGAGTCCACGGACATACCGCCCGCTCG
 CGCGCCGGCGGCCCATATTCTTGCCCCGGGGCTCAGGTGCCTGTATGGGGGGCGGAGC

 IleAlaAlaAlaProGlnGlyAspArgCysProIleValArgGlnArgGlyValAlaLeu
 841 ATCGCTGCCGGCGCGGAGGTGACCGGTGCCCAATCGTCCGTACGGCGGGGTGCGCCTG
 TAGCGACGGCGCGCGTCCCACTGGCCACGGGTAGCAGGCAGTCCGCGCCCCAGCGGAAC

 SerProValLeuProProMetAsnProValProThrSerGlyThrProAlaProAlaPro
 901 TCCCCGGTACTGCCCCCATGAACCCCGTTCCGACATCGGGCACCCCGCCCCCGCCG
 AGGGCCCATGACGGGGGTACTTGGGGCAAGGCTGTAGCCCCGTGGGGCGGGGGCGGC

 ProGlyAspGlySerTyrLeuTrpIleProAlaSerHisTyrAsnGlnLeuValAlaGly
 961 CCGGGCGACGGAGCTACCTGTGGATCCCGGCCCTCCCATTAACAACAGCTCGTCCCGGC
 GGGCGCTGCCCTCGATGACACCTAGGGCCGCGAGGTAATGTTGTCGAGCAGCGCGCGC

 HisAlaAlaProGlnProGlnProHisSerAlaPheGlyPheProAlaAlaAlaGlySer
 1021 CATGCCGGCCCCAACCCAGCCGCAATCCGCGTTTGGTTTCCCGGTGCGGGGGGTCC
 GTACGGCGGGGGTTGGGGTCCGGCTAAGCGCAACCAAGGGCCGAGCGCCCCCAGG

FIG. 1B(III)

ValAlaTyrGlyProHisGlyAlaGlyLeuSerGlnHisTyrProProHisValAlaHis
 1081 GTGGCCTATGGGCTCAGGTCGGGTCTTTCCAGCATTAACCTCCCCACGTGCGCCCAT
 CACCGGATACCCGGAGTGCCACGCCCCAGAAAGGTCTGTAATGGAGGGGTGCAGCGGGTA

 GlnTyrProGlyValLeuPheSerGlyProSerProLeuGluAlaGlnIleAlaAlaLeu
 1141 CAGTATCCCGGGTGCTGTTCTCGGACCCAGCCACTCGAGCGCAGATAGCCGCGTTG
 GTCATAGGGCCCCACGACACAAGAGCCCCCTGGGTCCGGTGAGCTCCGGCTCTATCGGCGCAAC

 ValGlyAlaIleAlaAlaAspArgGlnAlaGlyGlyGlnProAlaAlaGlyAspProGly
 1201 GTGGGGCCCATAGCCGGCGGACCGCCAGCGGGCGGTTCAGCCGGCCGGGAGACCTGGG
 CACCCCGGTATCGGGCCCTGGCGGTCCGGCCCGCCAGTCGGCCCGGCCCTCTGGGACCC

 ValArgGlySerGlyLysArgArgTyrGluAlaGlyProSerGluSerTyrCysAsp
 1261 GTCCGGGGTCCGGAAAGCGTCGCCGTACGAGCGGGCGGTCCGAGTCTCTACTGCGAC
 CAGGCCCCCAGCCCTTTCCGACGGGCCATGCTCCGCCCCCGGCAGCCTCAGGATGACGCTG

 GlnAspGluProAspAlaAspTyrProTyrTyrProGlyGluAlaArgGlyAlaProArg
 1321 CAGGACGAACCGGACCGGACTACCCGTACTACCCCGGGAGGCTCGAGCGCGCGCGC
 GTCTGCTTGGCCTGCGCCTGATGGGCATGATGGGGCCCCCTCCGAGCTCCGCGCGCGCGC

 GlyValAspSerArgAlaAlaArgHisSerProGlyThrAsnGluThrIleThrAla
 1381 GGGTCGACTCCCGCGCGCGCGCCCATTTCTCCGGGACCAACGAGACCATCAGGGCG
 CCCCAGCTGAGGGCGCGCGCGCGCGGTAAAGAGGGCCCTGGTTGCTCTGCTAGTGGCCCC

FIG.1B (IV)

1441 LeuMetGlyAlaValThrSerLeuGlnGlnGluLeuAlaHisMetArgAlaArgThrSer
 CTGATGGGGCGGTGACGTCTCTGCAGCAGGAACCTGGCGCACATCGGGCTCGGACCAGC
 GACTACCCCGCCACTGCAGAGAGCTCGTCTTGACCGCGTGTACGCCCGAGCCTGGTCTG

 1501 AlaProTyrGlyMetTyrThrProValAlaHisTyrArgProGlnValGlyGluProGlu
 GCCCCCTATGGAATGTACACGCCGGTGGCGCACTATCGCCCTCAGGTGGGGAGCCGGAA
 CGGGGATACCTTACATGTGGGCCACCGCGTGATAGCGGGAGTCCACCCCTCGGCCTT

 1561 ProThrThrThrHisProAlaLeuCysProProGluAlaValTyrArgProProHis
 CCAACAACGACCCCGGCCCTTGTCCCCCGGAGGCCGTGTATCGCCCCCACCACAC
 GGTGTGCTGGTGGGCCCGGAAACAGGGGCCCTCCGGCACATAGCGGGGGTGGTGTG

 1621 SerAlaProTyrGlyProProGlnGlyProAlaSerHisAlaProThrProProTyrAla
 AGCGCCCCCTACGGTCCTCCCCAGGGTCCGGCTCCCATGCCCCCACTCCCCCGTATGCC
 TCGCGGGGATGCCAGGAGGGTCCAGGCCCGCAGGGTACGGGGTGAGGGGGCATACGG

 1681 ProAlaAlaCysProProGlyProProProProProCysProSerThrGlnThrArgAla
 CCAGCTGCCCTGCCCGCCAGGCCCGCCACCGCCCCCATGTCTTCCACCCAGACGGCGCC
 GGTCCAGGACGGCGGTCCGGCGGTGGCGGGGTACAGGAAGGTGGTCTGCGCGCGG

 1741 ProLeuProThrGluProAlaPheProProAlaAlaThrGlySerGlnProGluAlaSer
 CCTCTACCGACGAGCCGGGTTCCTCCCCCGCCGACCGGATCCCAACCGGAGGCATCC
 GGAGATGGCTGCCTCGGGCGCAAGGGGGGGCGGTGGCCCTAGGGTTGGCCTCCGTAGG

FIG.1B(V)

11801 AsnAlaGluAlaGlyAlaLeuValAsnAlaSerSerAlaAlaHisValAspValAspThr
AACGGGAGGCCGGGCCCTTGTC AACGCCAGCAGCACACGTCGACGTTGACACG
TTGGCCTCCGGCCCGGGAACAGTTGGGTCGTCGCTGTGCACCTGCAACTGTGC

11861 AlaArgAlaAlaAspLeuPheValSerGlnMetMetGlyAlaArg
GCCCGCGCGCCGATTGTTCTCTCTCAGATGATGGGGCCCCC
CGGGCGCGCGGCTAAACAAGCAGAGAGTCTACTACCCCCGGCGC

FIG. 1B (VI)

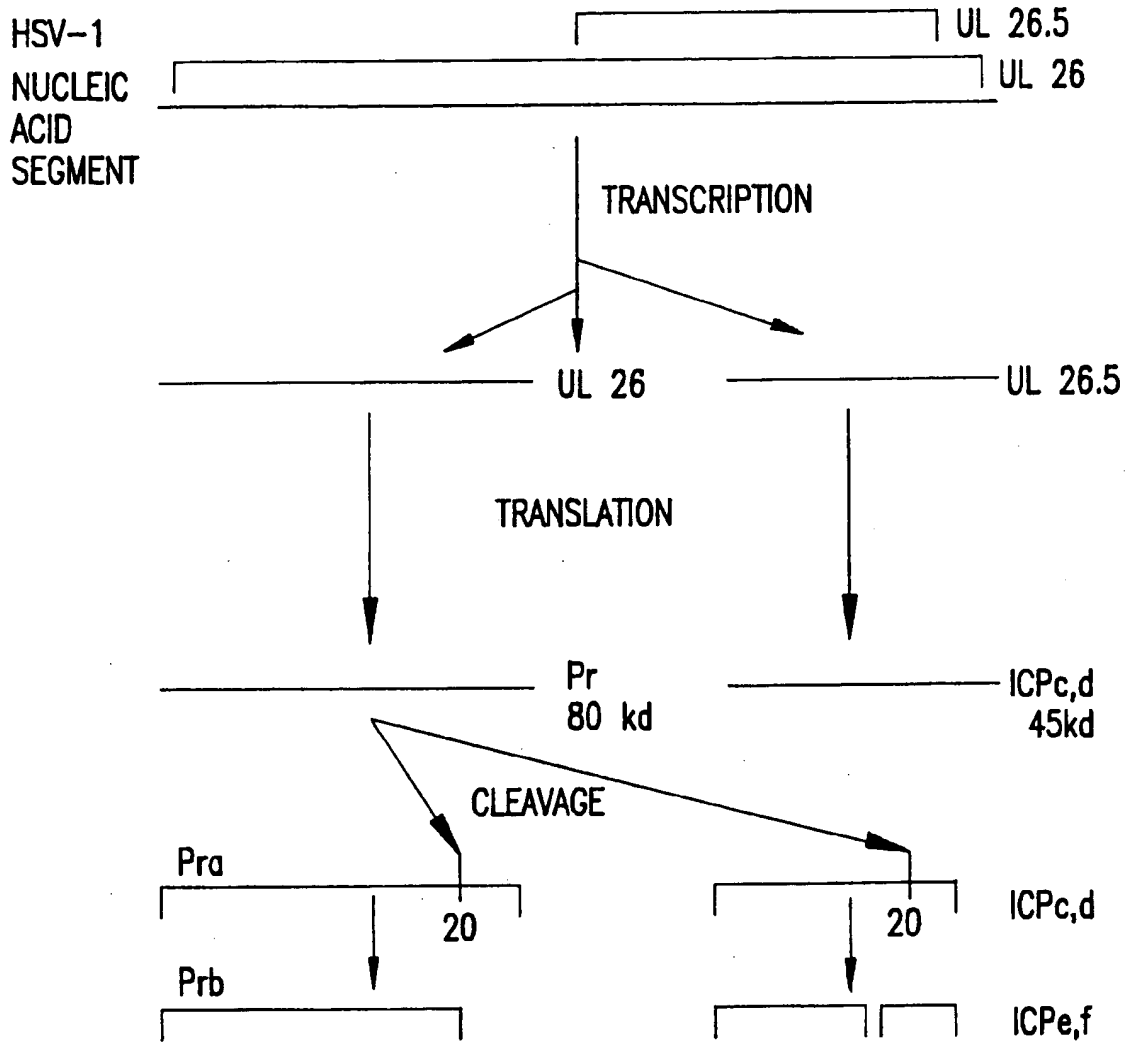


FIG.2

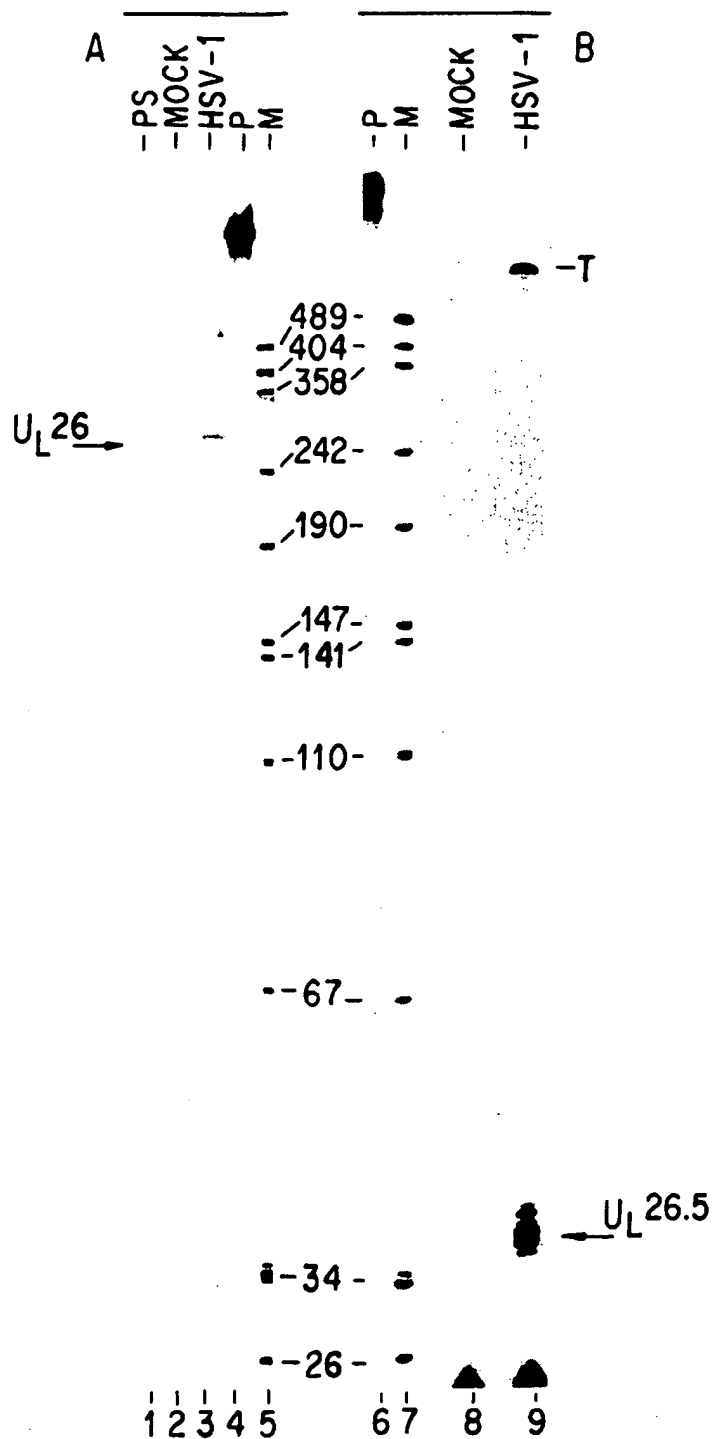


FIG. 3

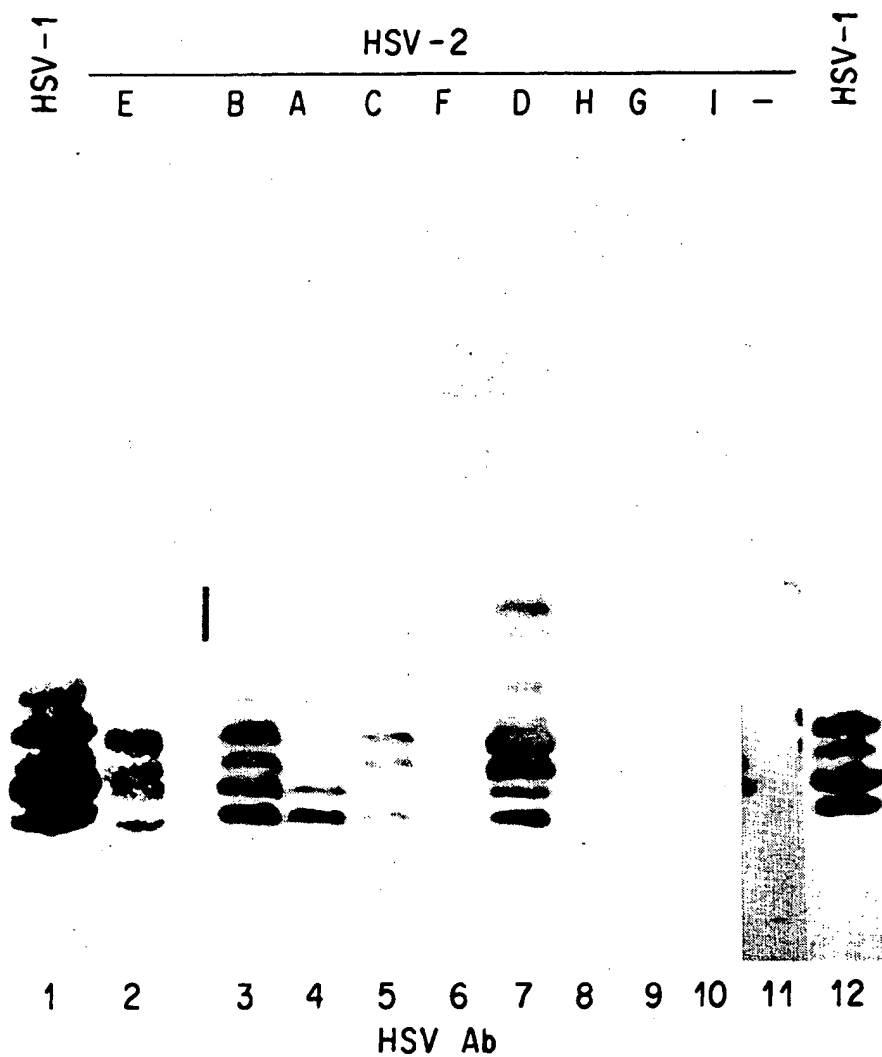


FIG. 4

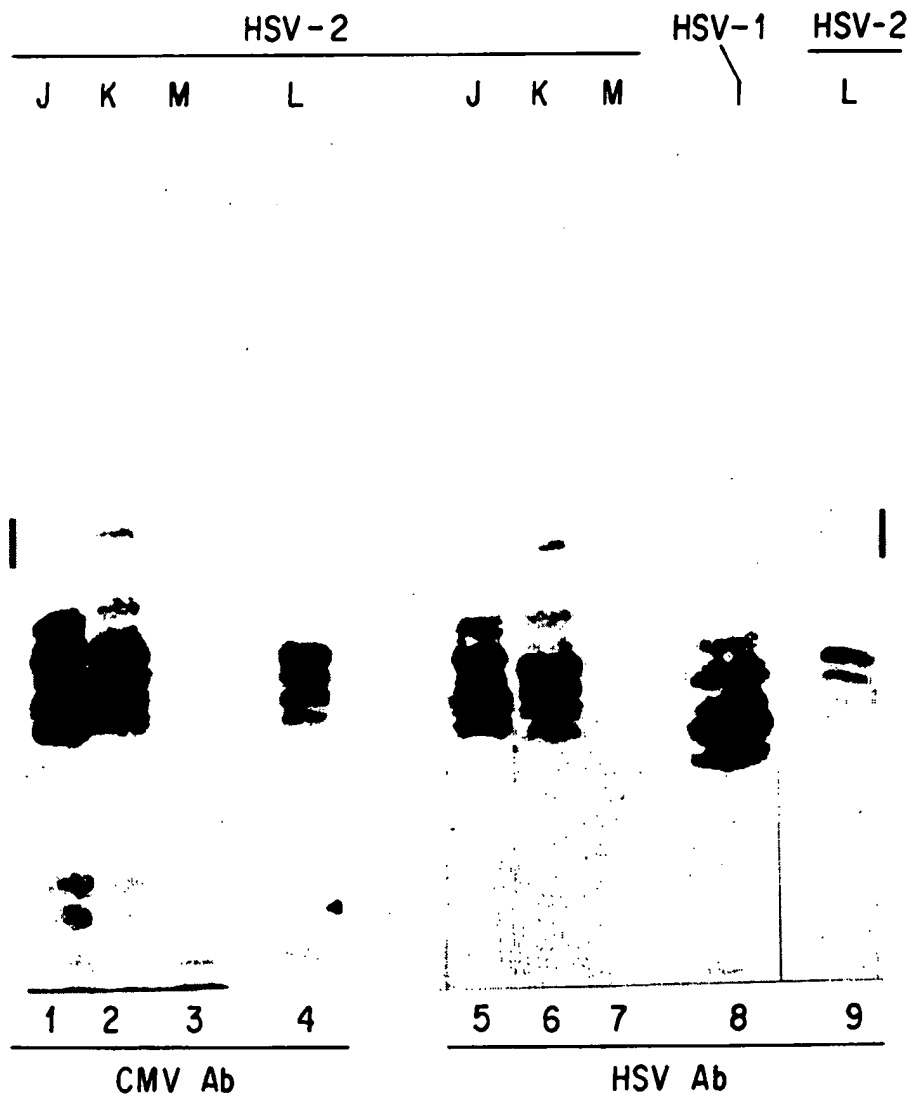


FIG. 5

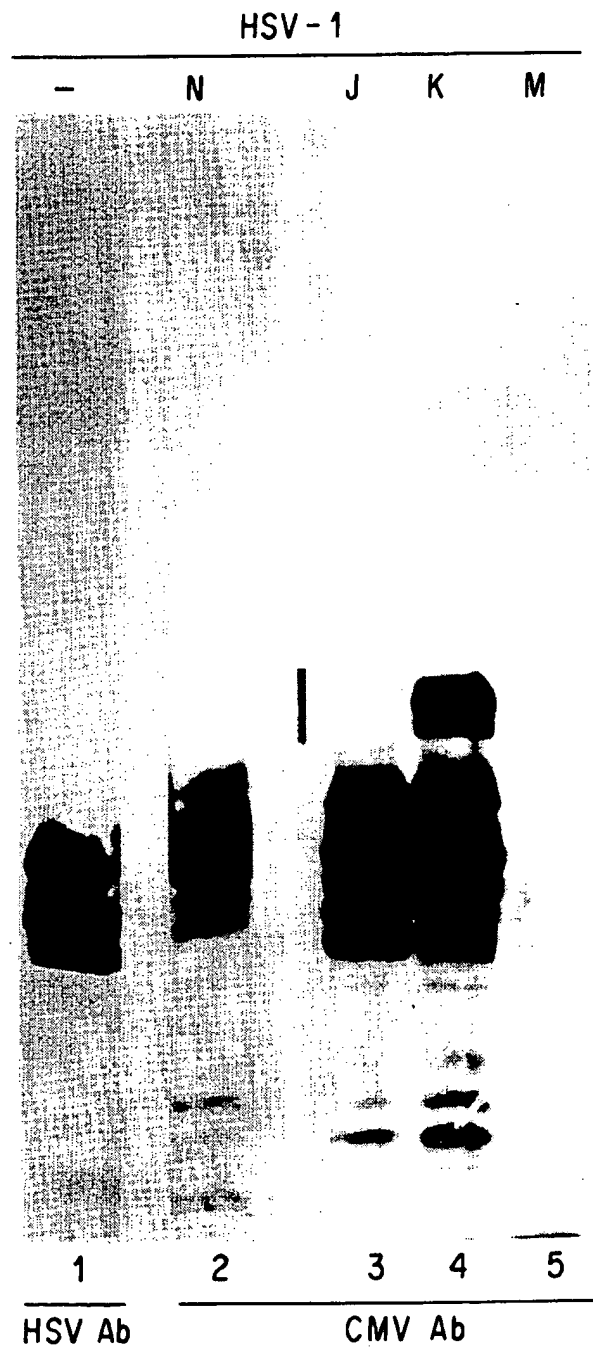


FIG. 6

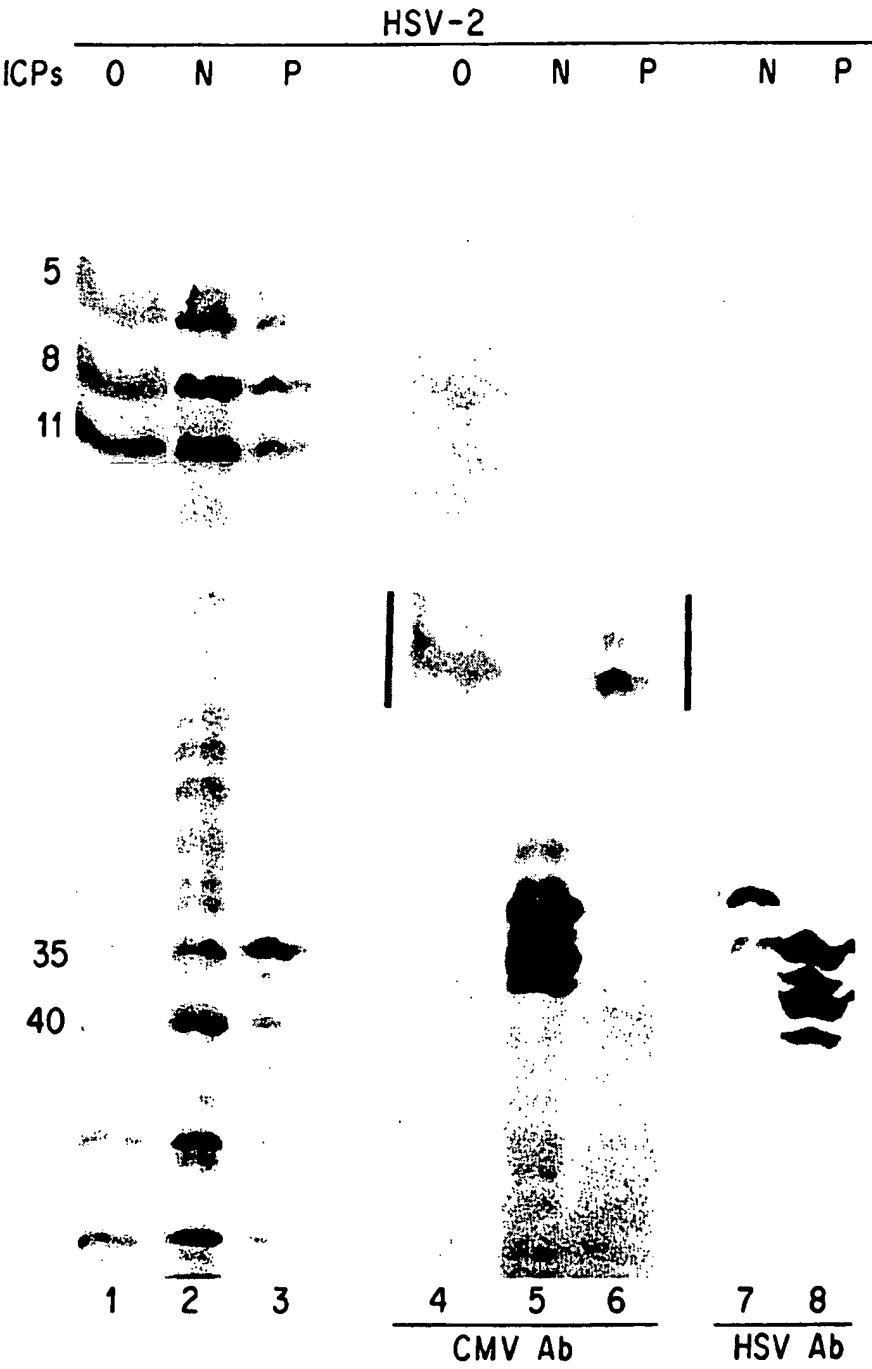


FIG. 7

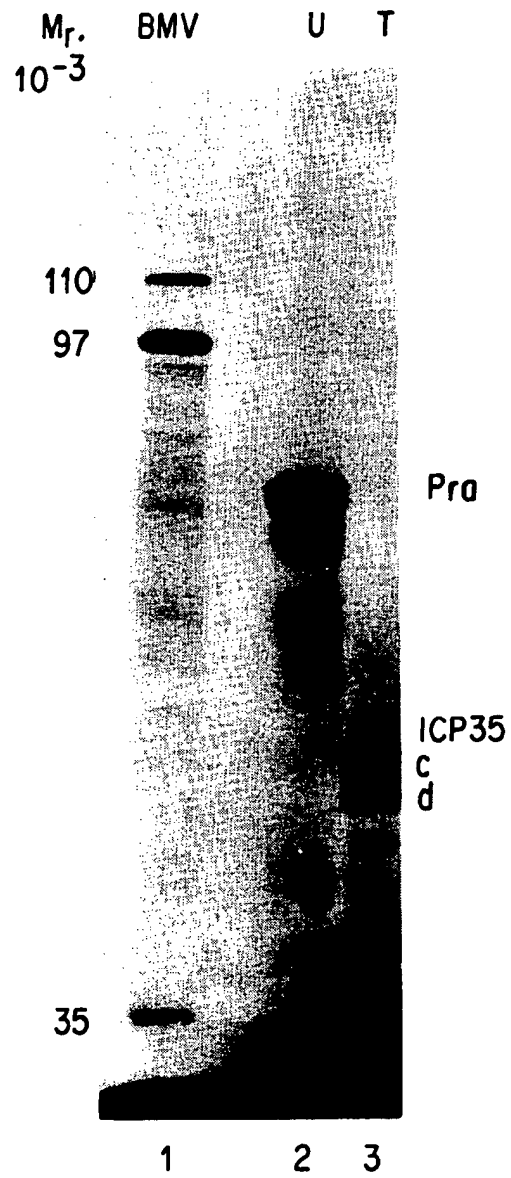


FIG. 8

HSV - 1					
34°	39°		34°	39°	
-	-	A	E	-	C
				C	

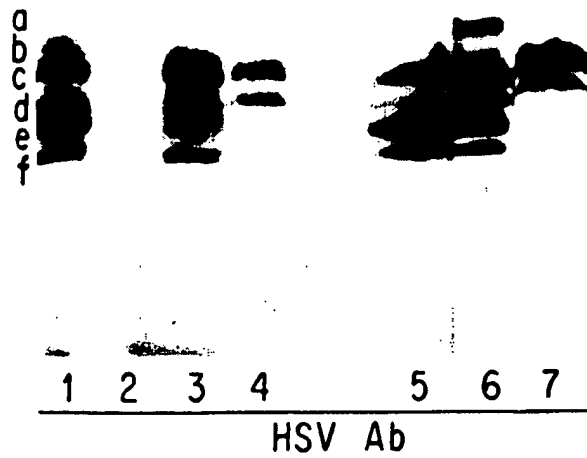


FIG. 9

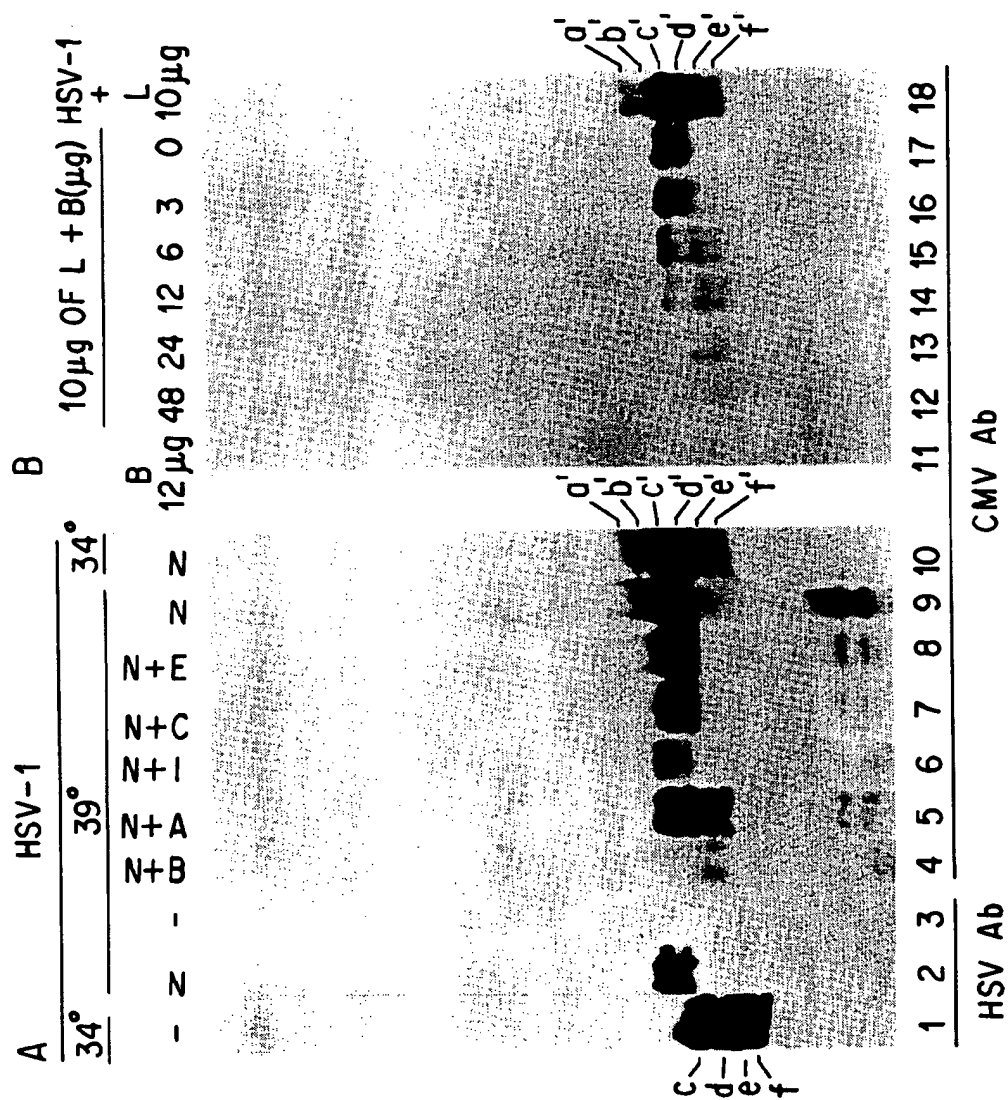


FIG. 10

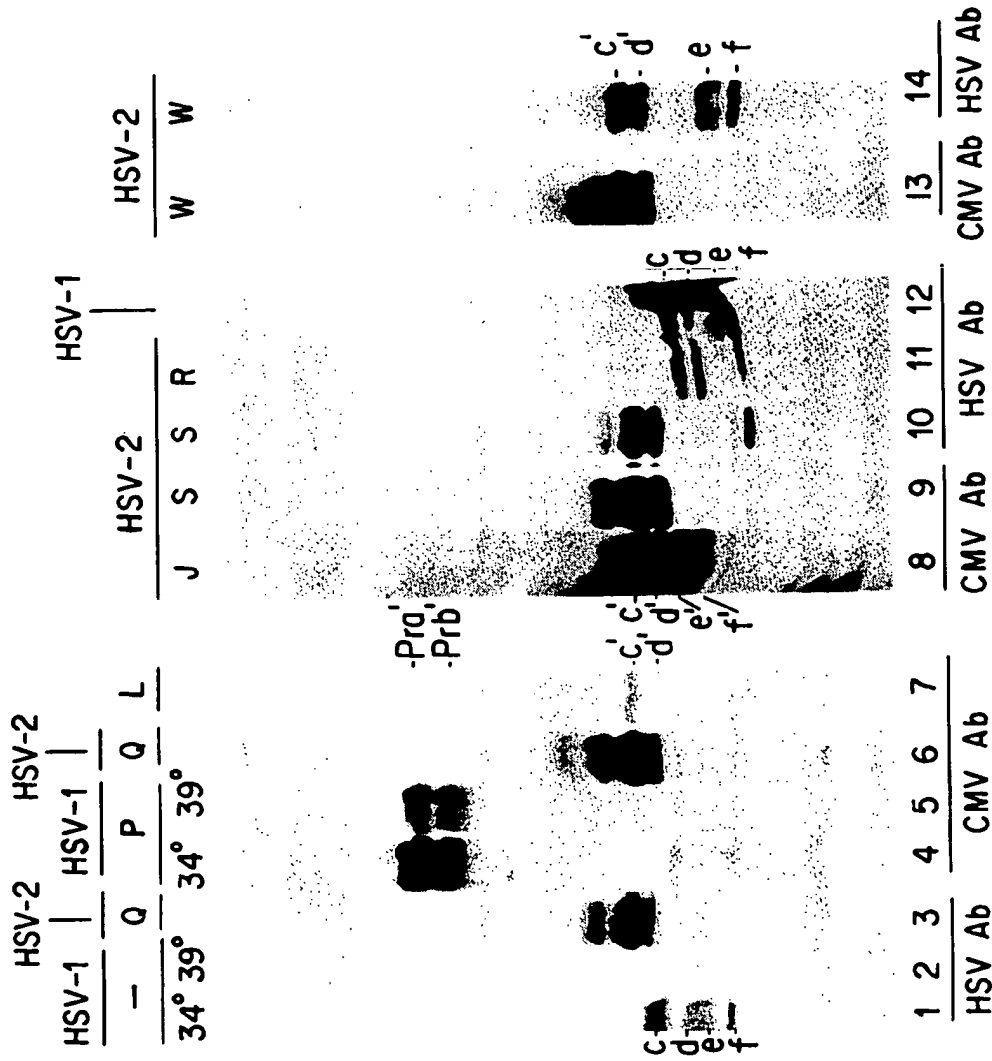


FIG. 11

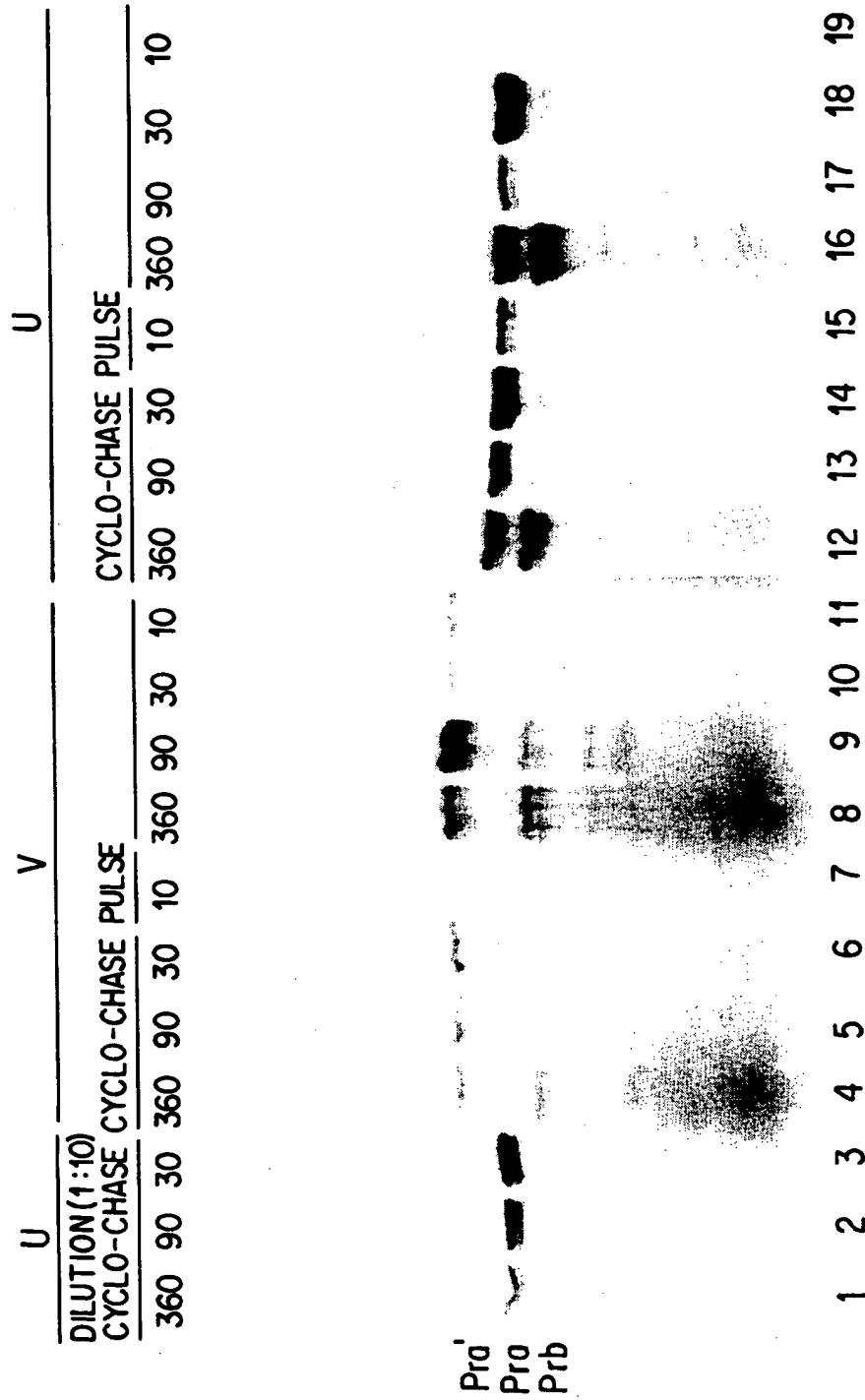


FIG. 12

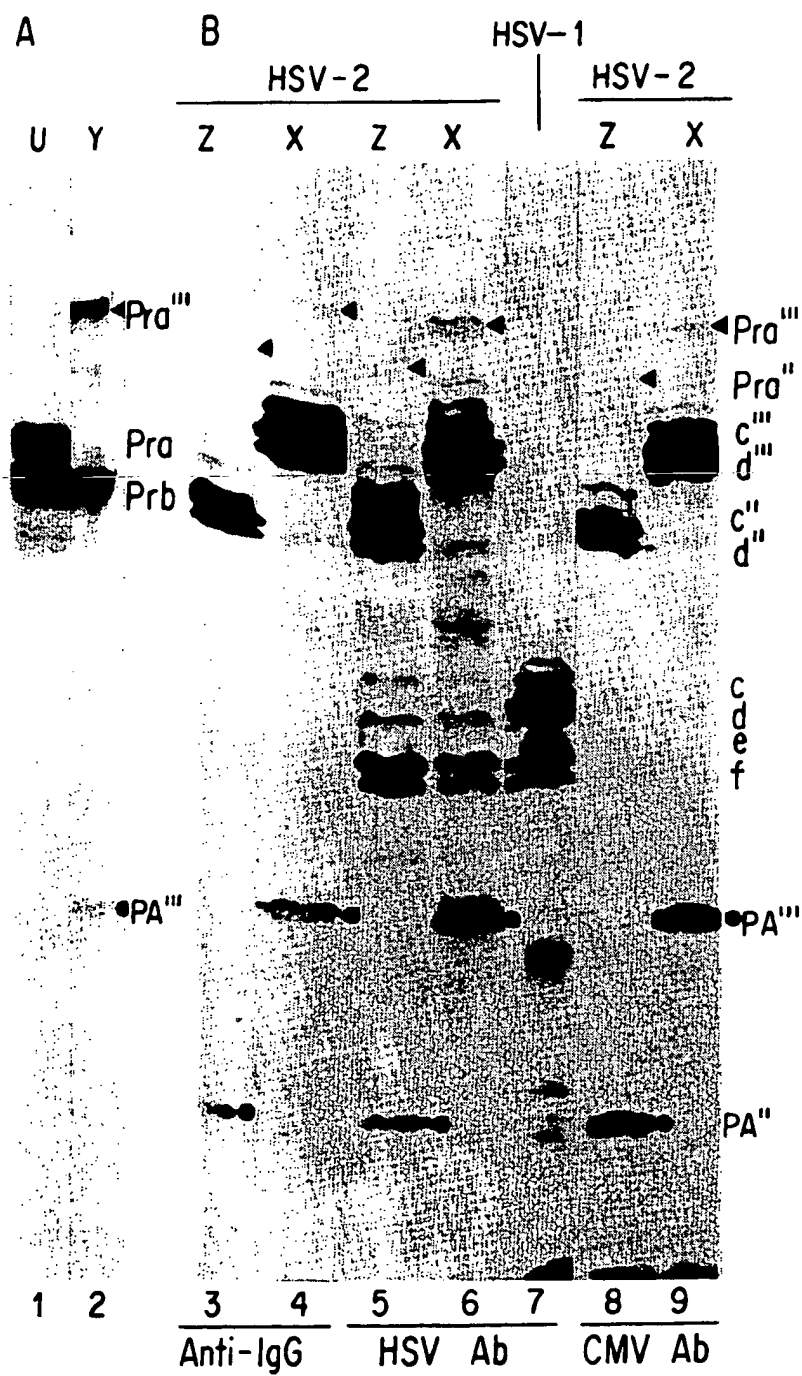


FIG. 13

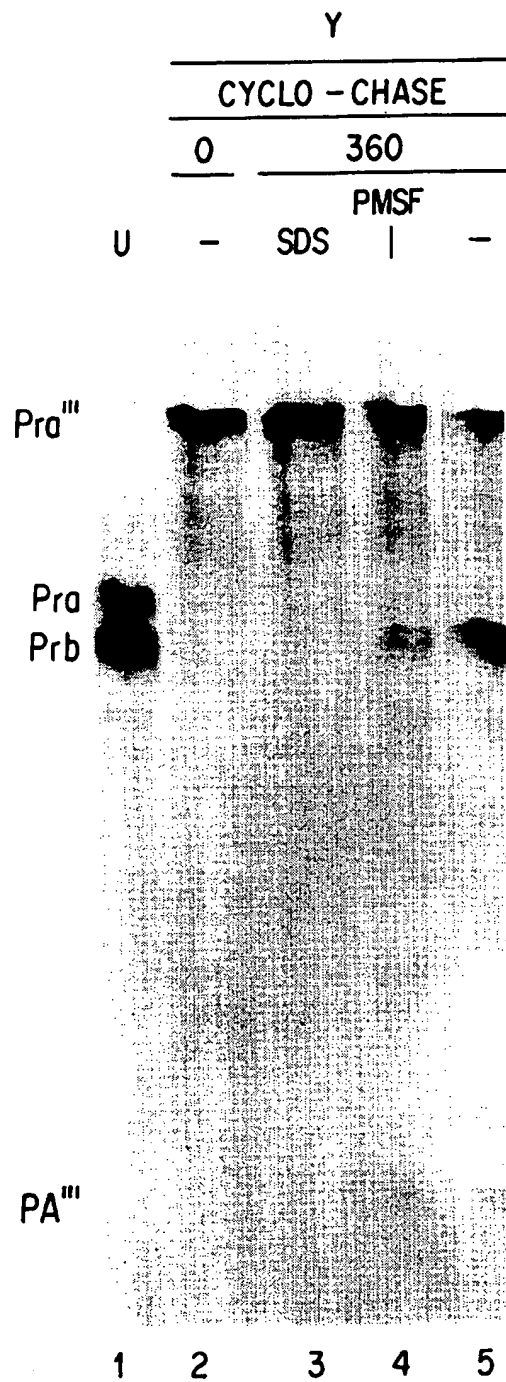


FIG. 14

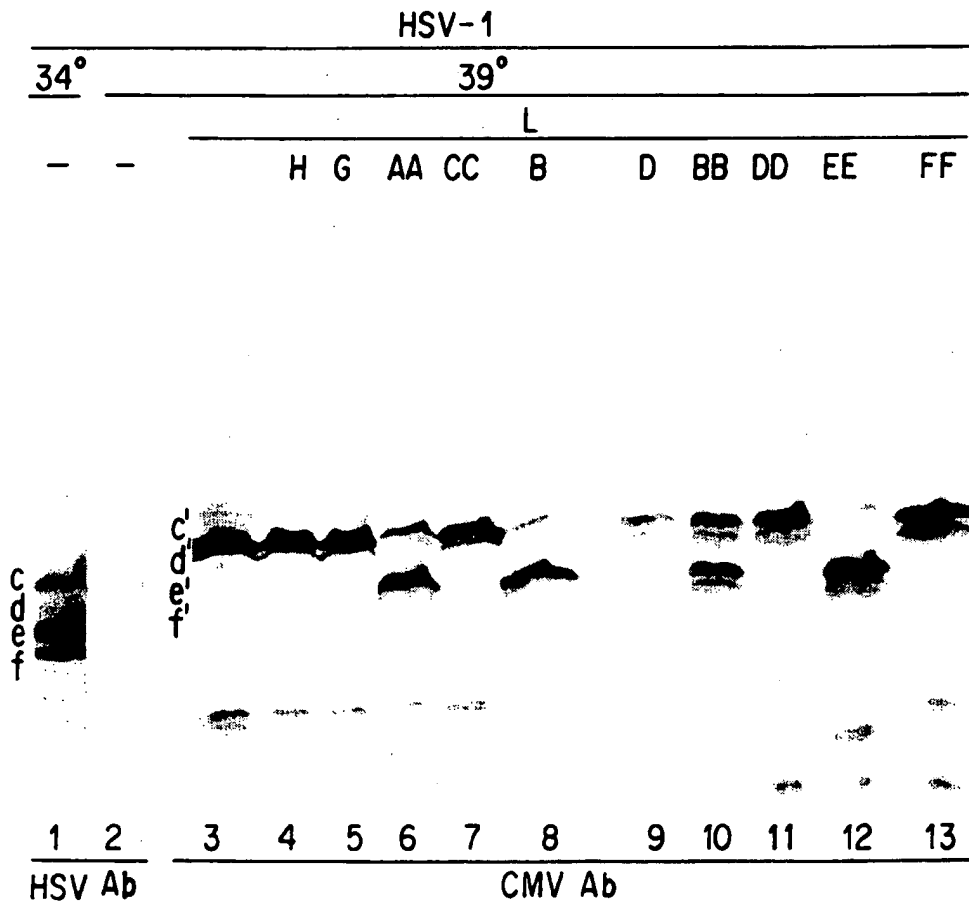


FIG. 15A

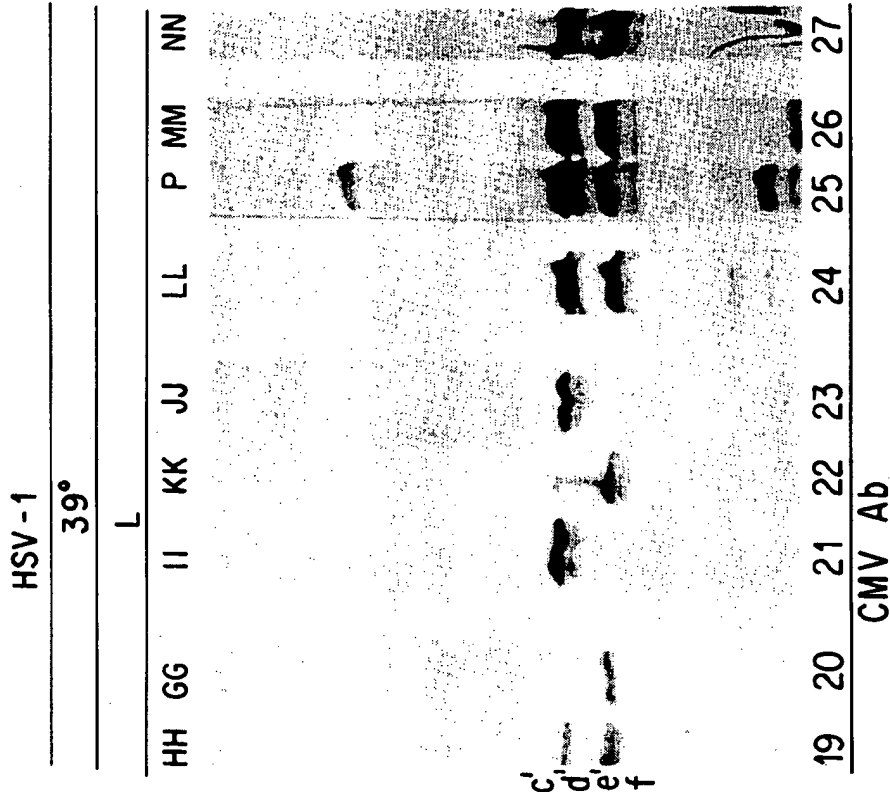


FIG. 15C

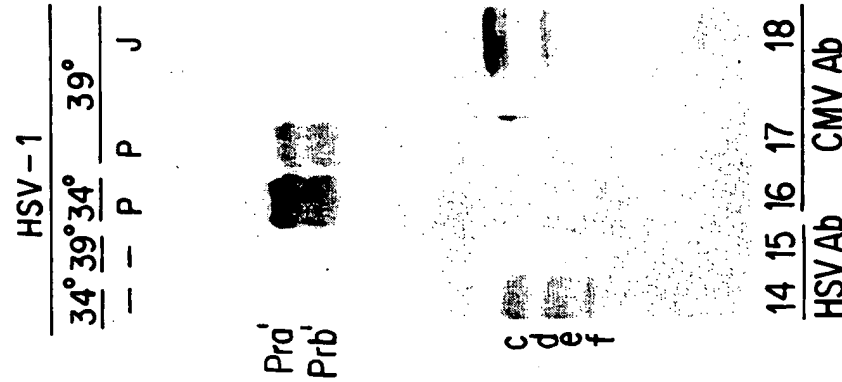


FIG. 15B

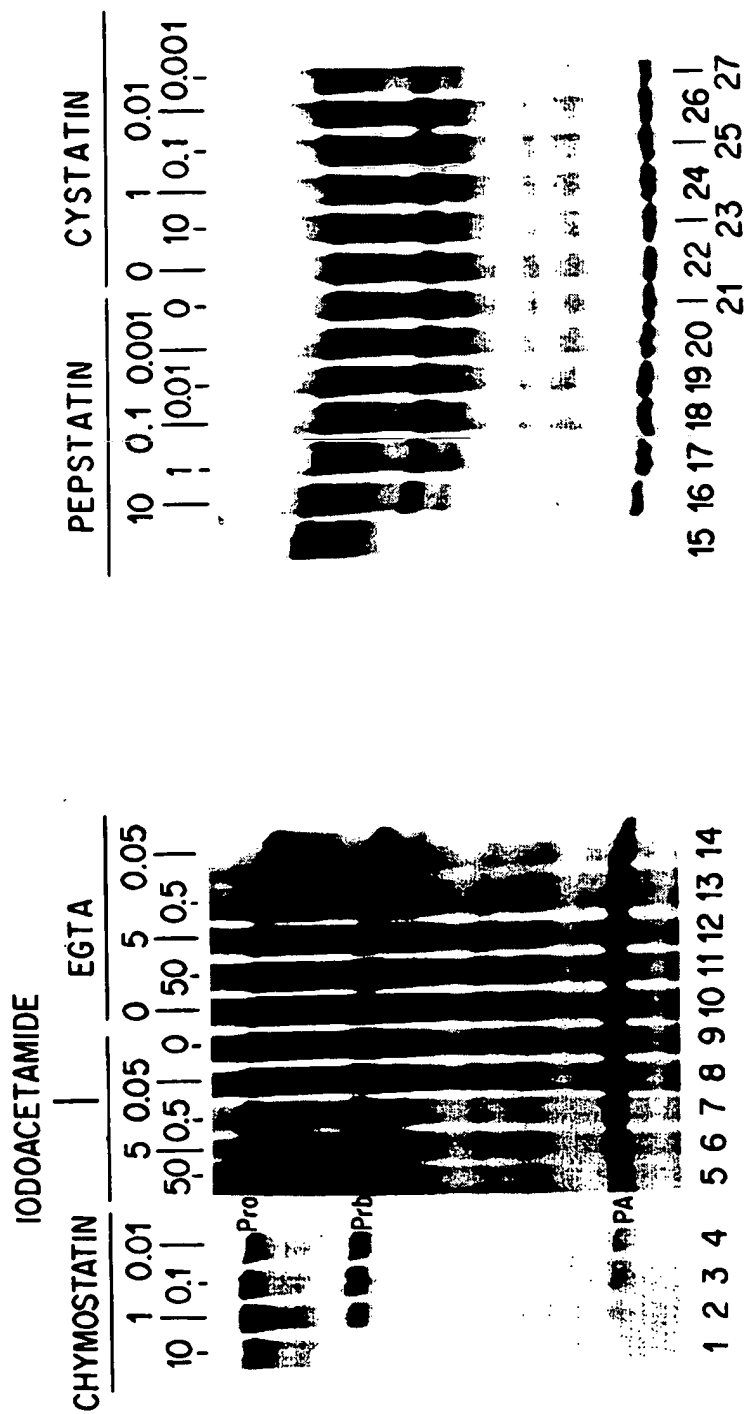


FIG. 16B

FIG. 16A

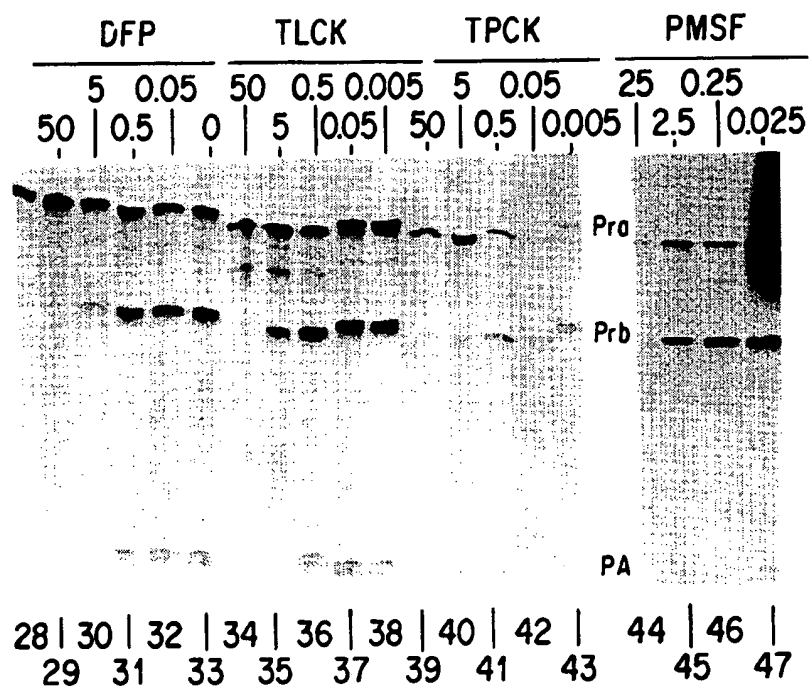


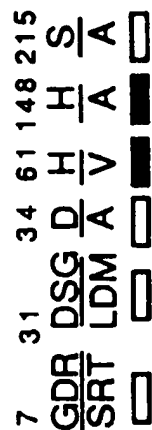
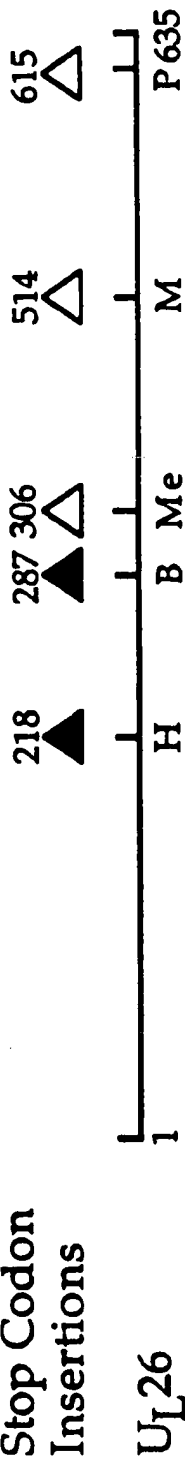
FIG. 16C



Deletions



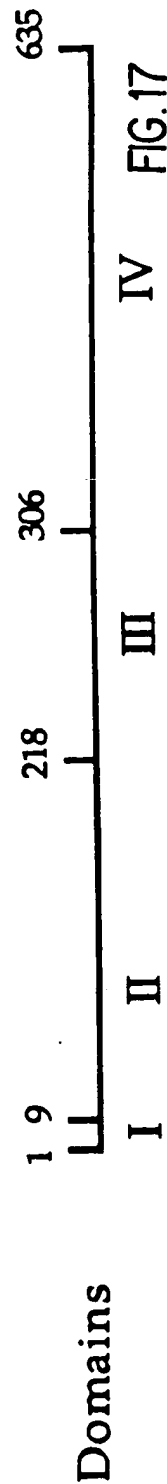
Stop Codon
Insertions



Substitutions



CMV Epitope
Insertions



Domains

FIG.17

THIS PAGE BLANK

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)